

# The Isabelle/HOL Algebra Library

Clemens Ballarin  
Florian Kammüller  
Lawrence C Paulson

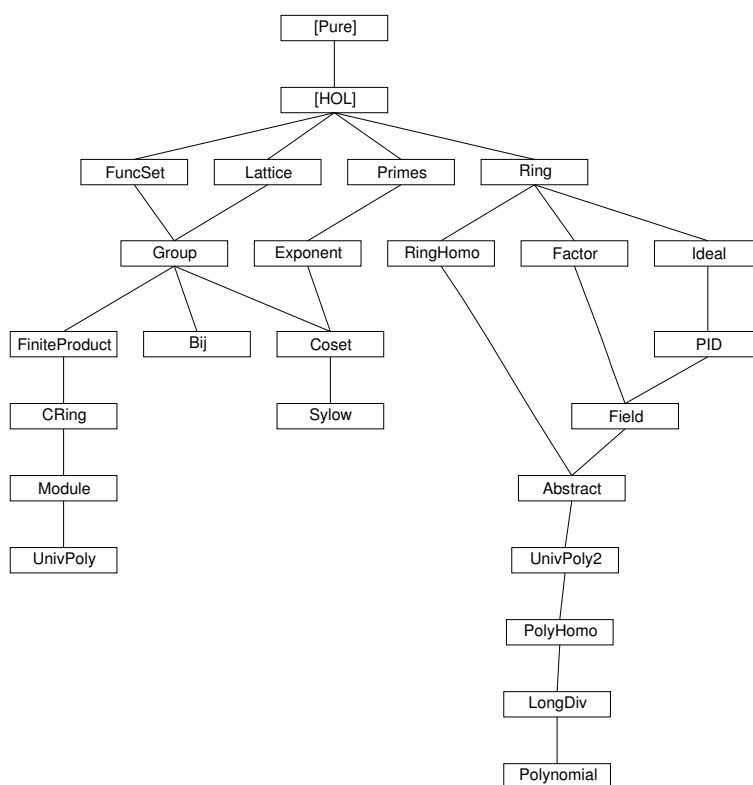
October 1, 2005

## Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Lattice: Orders and Lattices</b>	<b>4</b>
1.1	Partial Orders . . . . .	4
1.1.1	Upper . . . . .	5
1.1.2	Lower . . . . .	5
1.1.3	least . . . . .	5
1.1.4	greatest . . . . .	6
1.2	Lattices . . . . .	7
1.2.1	Supremum . . . . .	7
1.2.2	Infimum . . . . .	12
1.3	Total Orders . . . . .	16
1.4	Complete lattices . . . . .	17
1.5	Examples . . . . .	20
1.5.1	Powerset of a set is a complete lattice . . . . .	20
<b>2</b>	<b>Group: Groups</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Monoids and Groups</b>	<b>21</b>
3.1	Definitions . . . . .	21
3.2	Cancellation Laws and Basic Properties . . . . .	26
3.3	Subgroups . . . . .	27
3.4	Direct Products . . . . .	29
3.5	Homomorphisms and Isomorphisms . . . . .	30
3.6	Isomorphisms . . . . .	30
3.7	Commutative Structures . . . . .	32
3.8	Definition . . . . .	32
3.9	Lattice of subgroups of a group . . . . .	33

<b>4</b>	<b>FiniteProduct: Product Operator for Commutative Monoids</b>	<b>35</b>
4.1	Left-commutative operations . . . . .	36
4.2	Commutative monoids . . . . .	40
4.3	Products over Finite Sets . . . . .	41
<b>5</b>	<b>Exponent: The Combinatorial Argument Underlying the First Sylow Theorem</b>	<b>45</b>
5.1	Prime Theorems . . . . .	45
5.2	Exponent Theorems . . . . .	47
5.3	Lemmas for the Main Combinatorial Argument . . . . .	49
<b>6</b>	<b>Coset: Cosets and Quotient Groups</b>	<b>52</b>
6.1	Basic Properties of Cosets . . . . .	52
6.2	Normal subgroups . . . . .	54
6.3	More Properties of Cosets . . . . .	55
6.3.1	Set of inverses of an $r$ -coset. . . . .	57
6.3.2	Theorems for $\langle \# \rangle$ with $\#$ or $\langle \# \rangle$ . . . . .	57
6.3.3	An Equivalence Relation . . . . .	58
6.3.4	Two distinct right cosets are disjoint . . . . .	59
6.4	Order of a Group and Lagrange's Theorem . . . . .	59
6.5	Quotient Groups: Factorization of a Group . . . . .	61
6.6	The First Isomorphism Theorem . . . . .	62
<b>7</b>	<b>Sylow: Sylow's theorem</b>	<b>65</b>
7.1	Main Part of the Proof . . . . .	66
7.2	Discharging the Assumptions of <i>syLOW-central</i> . . . . .	67
7.2.1	Introduction and Destruct Rules for $H$ . . . . .	68
7.3	Equal Cardinalities of $M$ and the Set of Cosets . . . . .	69
7.3.1	The opposite injection . . . . .	70
<b>8</b>	<b>Bij: Bijections of a Set, Permutation Groups, Automorphism Groups</b>	<b>72</b>
8.1	Bijections Form a Group . . . . .	73
8.2	Automorphisms Form a Group . . . . .	73
<b>9</b>	<b>CRing: Abelian Groups</b>	<b>74</b>
9.1	Basic Properties . . . . .	75
9.2	Sums over Finite Sets . . . . .	78
<b>10</b>	<b>The Algebraic Hierarchy of Rings</b>	<b>80</b>
10.1	Basic Definitions . . . . .	80
10.2	Basic Facts of Rings . . . . .	80
10.3	Normaliser for Rings . . . . .	81
10.4	Sums over Finite Sets . . . . .	83
10.5	Facts of Integral Domains . . . . .	84

10.6 Morphisms . . . . .	85
<b>11 Module: Modules over an Abelian Group</b>	<b>87</b>
11.1 Basic Properties of Algebras . . . . .	88
<b>12 UnivPoly: Univariate Polynomials</b>	<b>89</b>
12.1 The Constructor for Univariate Polynomials . . . . .	90
12.2 Effect of operations on coefficients . . . . .	92
12.3 Polynomials form a commutative ring. . . . .	93
12.4 Polynomials form an Algebra . . . . .	97
12.5 Further lemmas involving monomials . . . . .	98
12.6 The degree function . . . . .	101
12.7 Polynomials over an integral domain form an integral domain	107
12.8 Evaluation Homomorphism and Universal Property . . . . .	108
12.9 Sample application of evaluation homomorphism . . . . .	114



# 1 Lattice: Orders and Lattices

**theory** *Lattice* **imports** *Main* **begin**

Object with a carrier set.

**record** *'a partial-object* =  
   *carrier* :: *'a set*

## 1.1 Partial Orders

**record** *'a order* = *'a partial-object* +  
   *le* :: [*'a*, *'a*] ==> *bool* (**infixl**  $\sqsubseteq$  50)

**locale** *partial-order* = *struct* *L* +  
   **assumes** *refl* [*intro*, *simp*]:  
      $x \in \text{carrier } L \implies x \sqsubseteq x$   
   **and** *anti-sym* [*intro*]:  
      $[x \sqsubseteq y; y \sqsubseteq x; x \in \text{carrier } L; y \in \text{carrier } L] \implies x = y$   
   **and** *trans* [*trans*]:  
      $[x \sqsubseteq y; y \sqsubseteq z; x \in \text{carrier } L; y \in \text{carrier } L; z \in \text{carrier } L] \implies x \sqsubseteq z$

**constdefs** (**structure** *L*)  
   *less* :: [*-*, *'a*, *'a*] ==> *bool* (**infixl**  $\sqsubset$  50)  
    $x \sqsubset y \iff x \sqsubseteq y \ \& \ x \neq y$

— Upper and lower bounds of a set.

*Upper* :: [*-*, *'a set*] ==> *'a set*  
*Upper* *L* *A* == {*u*. (*ALL* *x*.  $x \in A \cap \text{carrier } L \implies x \sqsubseteq u$ )}  $\cap$   
   *carrier L*

*Lower* :: [*-*, *'a set*] ==> *'a set*  
*Lower* *L* *A* == {*l*. (*ALL* *x*.  $x \in A \cap \text{carrier } L \implies l \sqsubseteq x$ )}  $\cap$   
   *carrier L*

— Least and greatest, as predicate.

*least* :: [*-*, *'a*, *'a set*] ==> *bool*  
*least* *L* *l* *A* ==  $A \subseteq \text{carrier } L \ \& \ l \in A \ \& \ (\text{ALL } x : A. l \sqsubseteq x)$

*greatest* :: [*-*, *'a*, *'a set*] ==> *bool*  
*greatest* *L* *g* *A* ==  $A \subseteq \text{carrier } L \ \& \ g \in A \ \& \ (\text{ALL } x : A. x \sqsubseteq g)$

— Supremum and infimum

*sup* :: [*-*, *'a set*] ==> *'a* ( $\bigsqcup_{1-} [90] \ 90$ )  
 $\bigsqcup A == \text{THE } x. \text{least } L \ x \ (\text{Upper } L \ A)$

*inf* :: [*-*, *'a set*] ==> *'a* ( $\bigsqcap_{1-} [90] \ 90$ )  
 $\bigsqcap A == \text{THE } x. \text{greatest } L \ x \ (\text{Lower } L \ A)$

*join* :: [*-*, *'a*, *'a*] ==> *'a* (**infixl**  $\sqcup$  65)

$$x \sqcup y == \sup L \{x, y\}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{meet} &:: [-, 'a, 'a] ==> 'a \text{ (infixl } \sqcap 70) \\ x \sqcap y &== \inf L \{x, y\} \end{aligned}$$

### 1.1.1 Upper

**lemma** *Upper-closed* [intro, simp]:

*Upper L A*  $\subseteq$  *carrier L*  
**by** (unfold *Upper-def*) clarify

**lemma** *UpperD* [dest]:

**includes** *struct L*  
**shows**  $[| u \in \text{Upper } L \ A; x \in A; A \subseteq \text{carrier } L |] ==> x \sqsubseteq u$   
**by** (unfold *Upper-def*) blast

**lemma** *Upper-memI*:

**includes** *struct L*  
**shows**  $[| !! y. y \in A ==> y \sqsubseteq x; x \in \text{carrier } L |] ==> x \in \text{Upper } L \ A$   
**by** (unfold *Upper-def*) blast

**lemma** *Upper-antimono*:

$A \subseteq B ==> \text{Upper } L \ B \subseteq \text{Upper } L \ A$   
**by** (unfold *Upper-def*) blast

### 1.1.2 Lower

**lemma** *Lower-closed* [intro, simp]:

*Lower L A*  $\subseteq$  *carrier L*  
**by** (unfold *Lower-def*) clarify

**lemma** *LowerD* [dest]:

**includes** *struct L*  
**shows**  $[| l \in \text{Lower } L \ A; x \in A; A \subseteq \text{carrier } L |] ==> l \sqsubseteq x$   
**by** (unfold *Lower-def*) blast

**lemma** *Lower-memI*:

**includes** *struct L*  
**shows**  $[| !! y. y \in A ==> x \sqsubseteq y; x \in \text{carrier } L |] ==> x \in \text{Lower } L \ A$   
**by** (unfold *Lower-def*) blast

**lemma** *Lower-antimono*:

$A \subseteq B ==> \text{Lower } L \ B \subseteq \text{Lower } L \ A$   
**by** (unfold *Lower-def*) blast

### 1.1.3 least

**lemma** *least-carrier* [intro, simp]:

**shows** *least L l A*  $==> l \in \text{carrier } L$   
**by** (unfold *least-def*) fast

**lemma** *least-mem*:

*least L l A ==> l ∈ A*  
**by** (*unfold least-def*) *fast*

**lemma** (*in partial-order*) *least-unique*:

*[| least L x A; least L y A |] ==> x = y*  
**by** (*unfold least-def*) *blast*

**lemma** *least-le*:

**includes** *struct L*  
**shows** *[| least L x A; a ∈ A |] ==> x ⊆ a*  
**by** (*unfold least-def*) *fast*

**lemma** *least-UpperI*:

**includes** *struct L*  
**assumes** *above: !! x. x ∈ A ==> x ⊆ s*  
**and** *below: !! y. y ∈ Upper L A ==> s ⊆ y*  
**and** *L: A ⊆ carrier L s ∈ carrier L*  
**shows** *least L s (Upper L A)*

**proof** –

**have** *Upper L A ⊆ carrier L* **by** *simp*  
**moreover from** *above L* **have** *s ∈ Upper L A* **by** (*simp add: Upper-def*)  
**moreover from** *below* **have** *ALL x : Upper L A. s ⊆ x* **by** *fast*  
**ultimately show** *?thesis* **by** (*simp add: least-def*)

**qed**

#### 1.1.4 greatest

**lemma** *greatest-carrier* [*intro, simp*]:

**shows** *greatest L l A ==> l ∈ carrier L*  
**by** (*unfold greatest-def*) *fast*

**lemma** *greatest-mem*:

*greatest L l A ==> l ∈ A*  
**by** (*unfold greatest-def*) *fast*

**lemma** (*in partial-order*) *greatest-unique*:

*[| greatest L x A; greatest L y A |] ==> x = y*  
**by** (*unfold greatest-def*) *blast*

**lemma** *greatest-le*:

**includes** *struct L*  
**shows** *[| greatest L x A; a ∈ A |] ==> a ⊆ x*  
**by** (*unfold greatest-def*) *fast*

**lemma** *greatest-LowerI*:

**includes** *struct L*  
**assumes** *below: !! x. x ∈ A ==> i ⊆ x*

```

    and above: !! y. y ∈ Lower L A ==> y ⊆ i
    and L: A ⊆ carrier L i ∈ carrier L
    shows greatest L i (Lower L A)
  proof -
    have Lower L A ⊆ carrier L by simp
    moreover from below L have i ∈ Lower L A by (simp add: Lower-def)
    moreover from above have ALL x : Lower L A. x ⊆ i by fast
    ultimately show ?thesis by (simp add: greatest-def)
  qed

```

## 1.2 Lattices

```

locale lattice = partial-order +
  assumes sup-of-two-exists:
    [| x ∈ carrier L; y ∈ carrier L |] ==> EX s. least L s (Upper L {x, y})
  and inf-of-two-exists:
    [| x ∈ carrier L; y ∈ carrier L |] ==> EX s. greatest L s (Lower L {x, y})

```

```

lemma least-Upper-above:
  includes struct L
  shows [| least L s (Upper L A); x ∈ A; A ⊆ carrier L |] ==> x ⊆ s
  by (unfold least-def) blast

```

```

lemma greatest-Lower-above:
  includes struct L
  shows [| greatest L i (Lower L A); x ∈ A; A ⊆ carrier L |] ==> i ⊆ x
  by (unfold greatest-def) blast

```

### 1.2.1 Supremum

```

lemma (in lattice) joinI:
  [| !!l. least L l (Upper L {x, y}) ==> P l; x ∈ carrier L; y ∈ carrier L |]
  ==> P (x ⊔ y)
proof (unfold join-def sup-def)
  assume L: x ∈ carrier L y ∈ carrier L
  and P: !!l. least L l (Upper L {x, y}) ==> P l
  with sup-of-two-exists obtain s where least L s (Upper L {x, y}) by fast
  with L show P (THE l. least L l (Upper L {x, y}))
  by (fast intro: theI2 least-unique P)
qed

```

```

lemma (in lattice) join-closed [simp]:
  [| x ∈ carrier L; y ∈ carrier L |] ==> x ⊔ y ∈ carrier L
  by (rule joinI) (rule least-carrier)

```

```

lemma (in partial-order) sup-of-singletonI:
  x ∈ carrier L ==> least L x (Upper L {x})
  by (rule least-UpperI) fast+

```

```

lemma (in partial-order) sup-of-singleton [simp]:

```

```

includes struct L
shows  $x \in \text{carrier } L \implies \bigsqcup \{x\} = x$ 
by (unfold sup-def) (blast intro: least-unique least-UpperI sup-of-singletonI)

```

Condition on  $A$ : supremum exists.

```

lemma (in lattice) sup-insertI:
  [| !!s. least L s (Upper L (insert x A)) ==> P s;
    least L a (Upper L A); x ∈ carrier L; A ⊆ carrier L |]
  ==> P (⋒ (insert x A))
proof (unfold sup-def)
  assume L: x ∈ carrier L A ⊆ carrier L
  and P: !!l. least L l (Upper L (insert x A)) ==> P l
  and least-a: least L a (Upper L A)
  from L least-a have La: a ∈ carrier L by simp
  from L sup-of-two-exists least-a
  obtain s where least-s: least L s (Upper L {a, x}) by blast
  show P (THE l. least L l (Upper L (insert x A)))
  proof (rule theI2)
    show least L s (Upper L (insert x A))
    proof (rule least-UpperI)
      fix z
      assume z ∈ insert x A
      then show z ⊆ s
      proof
        assume z = x then show ?thesis
        by (simp add: least-Upper-above [OF least-s] L La)
      next
        assume z ∈ A
        with L least-s least-a show ?thesis
        by (rule-tac trans [where y = a] (auto dest: least-Upper-above))
      qed
    next
      fix y
      assume y: y ∈ Upper L (insert x A)
      show s ⊆ y
      proof (rule least-le [OF least-s], rule Upper-memI)
        fix z
        assume z: z ∈ {a, x}
        then show z ⊆ y
        proof
          have y': y ∈ Upper L A
          apply (rule subsetD [where A = Upper L (insert x A)])
          apply (rule Upper-antimono) apply clarify apply assumption
          done
          assume z = a
          with y' least-a show ?thesis by (fast dest: least-le)
        next
          assume z ∈ {x}
          with y L show ?thesis by blast
      qed
    qed
  qed

```



```

    qed
  qed (rule Upper-closed [THEN subsetD])
next
  from L show insert x A  $\subseteq$  carrier L by simp
  from least-s show s  $\in$  carrier L by simp
qed
next
  fix l
  assume least-l: least L l (Upper L (insert x A))
  show l = s
  proof (rule least-unique)
    show least L s (Upper L (insert x A))
    proof (rule least-UpperI)
      fix z
      assume z  $\in$  insert x A
      then show z  $\subseteq$  s
      proof
        assume z = x then show ?thesis
        by (simp add: least-Upper-above [OF least-s] L La)
      next
        assume z  $\in$  A
        with L least-s least-a show ?thesis
        by (rule-tac trans [where y = a]) (auto dest: least-Upper-above)
      qed
    qed
  next
    fix y
    assume y: y  $\in$  Upper L (insert x A)
    show s  $\subseteq$  y
    proof (rule least-le [OF least-s], rule Upper-memI)
      fix z
      assume z: z  $\in$  {a, x}
      then show z  $\subseteq$  y
      proof
        have y': y  $\in$  Upper L A
        apply (rule subsetD [where A = Upper L (insert x A)])
        apply (rule Upper-antimono) apply clarify apply assumption
        done
        assume z = a
        with y' least-a show ?thesis by (fast dest: least-le)
      next
        assume z  $\in$  {x}
        with y L show ?thesis by blast
      qed
    qed (rule Upper-closed [THEN subsetD])
  next
    from L show insert x A  $\subseteq$  carrier L by simp
    from least-s show s  $\in$  carrier L by simp
  qed
qed

```

qed  
qed

**lemma** (in lattice) *finite-sup-least*:  
 $[ [ \text{finite } A; A \subseteq \text{carrier } L; A \sim = \{\} ] ] \implies \text{least } L (\bigsqcup A) (\text{Upper } L A)$   
**proof** (induct set: Finites)  
 case empty  
 then show ?case by simp  
next  
 case (insert x A)  
 show ?case  
 proof (cases A = {\})  
 case True  
 with insert show ?thesis by (simp add: sup-of-singletonI)  
next  
 case False  
 with insert have least L ( $\bigsqcup A$ ) (Upper L A) by simp  
 with - show ?thesis  
 by (rule sup-insertI) (simp-all add: insert [simplified])  
qed  
qed

**lemma** (in lattice) *finite-sup-insertI*:  
 assumes  $P: !!l. \text{least } L l (\text{Upper } L (\text{insert } x A)) \implies P l$   
 and  $xA: \text{finite } A \ x \in \text{carrier } L \ A \subseteq \text{carrier } L$   
 shows  $P (\bigsqcup (\text{insert } x A))$   
**proof** (cases A = {\})  
 case True with P and xA show ?thesis  
 by (simp add: sup-of-singletonI)  
next  
 case False with P and xA show ?thesis  
 by (simp add: sup-insertI finite-sup-least)  
qed

**lemma** (in lattice) *finite-sup-closed*:  
 $[ [ \text{finite } A; A \subseteq \text{carrier } L; A \sim = \{\} ] ] \implies \bigsqcup A \in \text{carrier } L$   
**proof** (induct set: Finites)  
 case empty then show ?case by simp  
next  
 case insert then show ?case  
 by - (rule finite-sup-insertI, simp-all)  
qed

**lemma** (in lattice) *join-left*:  
 $[ [ x \in \text{carrier } L; y \in \text{carrier } L ] ] \implies x \sqsubseteq x \sqcup y$   
 by (rule joinI [folded join-def]) (blast dest: least-mem)

**lemma** (in lattice) *join-right*:  
 $[ [ x \in \text{carrier } L; y \in \text{carrier } L ] ] \implies y \sqsubseteq x \sqcup y$

**by** (*rule joinI [folded join-def]*) (*blast dest: least-mem*)

**lemma** (*in lattice*) *sup-of-two-least*:

$[x \in \text{carrier } L; y \in \text{carrier } L] \implies \text{least } L (\sqcup \{x, y\}) (\text{Upper } L \{x, y\})$

**proof** (*unfold sup-def*)

**assume**  $L: x \in \text{carrier } L \ y \in \text{carrier } L$

**with** *sup-of-two-exists* **obtain**  $s$  **where**  $\text{least } L s (\text{Upper } L \{x, y\})$  **by** *fast*

**with**  $L$  **show**  $\text{least } L (\text{THE } xa. \text{least } L xa (\text{Upper } L \{x, y\})) (\text{Upper } L \{x, y\})$

**by** (*fast intro: theI2 least-unique*)

**qed**

**lemma** (*in lattice*) *join-le*:

**assumes**  $sub: x \sqsubseteq z \ y \sqsubseteq z$

**and**  $L: x \in \text{carrier } L \ y \in \text{carrier } L \ z \in \text{carrier } L$

**shows**  $x \sqcup y \sqsubseteq z$

**proof** (*rule joinI*)

**fix**  $s$

**assume**  $\text{least } L s (\text{Upper } L \{x, y\})$

**with**  $sub \ L$  **show**  $s \sqsubseteq z$  **by** (*fast elim: least-le intro: Upper-memI*)

**qed**

**lemma** (*in lattice*) *join-assoc-lemma*:

**assumes**  $L: x \in \text{carrier } L \ y \in \text{carrier } L \ z \in \text{carrier } L$

**shows**  $x \sqcup (y \sqcup z) = \sqcup \{x, y, z\}$

**proof** (*rule finite-sup-insertI*)

— The textbook argument in Jacobson I, p 457

**fix**  $s$

**assume**  $\text{sup } L s (\text{Upper } L \{x, y, z\})$

**show**  $x \sqcup (y \sqcup z) = s$

**proof** (*rule anti-sym*)

**from**  $\text{sup } L$  **show**  $x \sqcup (y \sqcup z) \sqsubseteq s$

**by** (*fastsimp intro!: join-le elim: least-Upper-above*)

**next**

**from**  $\text{sup } L$  **show**  $s \sqsubseteq x \sqcup (y \sqcup z)$

**by** (*erule-tac least-le*)

(*blast intro!: Upper-memI intro: trans join-left join-right join-closed*)

**qed** (*simp-all add: L least-carrier [OF sup]*)

**qed** (*simp-all add: L*)

**lemma** *join-comm*:

**includes** *struct L*

**shows**  $x \sqcup y = y \sqcup x$

**by** (*unfold join-def*) (*simp add: insert-commute*)

**lemma** (*in lattice*) *join-assoc*:

**assumes**  $L: x \in \text{carrier } L \ y \in \text{carrier } L \ z \in \text{carrier } L$

**shows**  $(x \sqcup y) \sqcup z = x \sqcup (y \sqcup z)$

**proof** —

**have**  $(x \sqcup y) \sqcup z = z \sqcup (x \sqcup y)$  **by** (*simp only: join-comm*)

also from  $L$  have ... =  $\sqcup \{z, x, y\}$  by (simp add: join-assoc-lemma)  
 also from  $L$  have ... =  $\sqcup \{x, y, z\}$  by (simp add: insert-commute)  
 also from  $L$  have ... =  $x \sqcup (y \sqcup z)$  by (simp add: join-assoc-lemma)  
 finally show ?thesis .  
 qed

### 1.2.2 Infimum

**lemma** (in lattice) meetI:

$\llbracket \text{!!}i. \text{greatest } L \ i \ (\text{Lower } L \ \{x, y\}) \implies P \ i;$   
 $x \in \text{carrier } L; y \in \text{carrier } L \rrbracket$   
 $\implies P \ (x \sqcap y)$

**proof** (unfold meet-def inf-def)

assume  $L: x \in \text{carrier } L \ y \in \text{carrier } L$   
 and  $P: \text{!!}g. \text{greatest } L \ g \ (\text{Lower } L \ \{x, y\}) \implies P \ g$   
 with inf-of-two-exists obtain  $i$  where  $\text{greatest } L \ i \ (\text{Lower } L \ \{x, y\})$  by fast  
 with  $L$  show  $P \ (\text{THE } g. \text{greatest } L \ g \ (\text{Lower } L \ \{x, y\}))$   
 by (fast intro: theI2 greatest-unique  $P$ )

qed

**lemma** (in lattice) meet-closed [simp]:

$\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } L; y \in \text{carrier } L \rrbracket \implies x \sqcap y \in \text{carrier } L$   
 by (rule meetI) (rule greatest-carrier)

**lemma** (in partial-order) inf-of-singletonI:

$x \in \text{carrier } L \implies \text{greatest } L \ x \ (\text{Lower } L \ \{x\})$   
 by (rule greatest-LowerI) fast+

**lemma** (in partial-order) inf-of-singleton [simp]:

includes struct  $L$   
 shows  $x \in \text{carrier } L \implies \bigcap \{x\} = x$   
 by (unfold inf-def) (blast intro: greatest-unique greatest-LowerI inf-of-singletonI)

Condition on  $A$ : infimum exists.

**lemma** (in lattice) inf-insertI:

$\llbracket \text{!!}i. \text{greatest } L \ i \ (\text{Lower } L \ (\text{insert } x \ A)) \implies P \ i;$   
 $\text{greatest } L \ a \ (\text{Lower } L \ A); x \in \text{carrier } L; A \subseteq \text{carrier } L \rrbracket$   
 $\implies P \ (\bigcap (\text{insert } x \ A))$

**proof** (unfold inf-def)

assume  $L: x \in \text{carrier } L \ A \subseteq \text{carrier } L$   
 and  $P: \text{!!}g. \text{greatest } L \ g \ (\text{Lower } L \ (\text{insert } x \ A)) \implies P \ g$   
 and greatest-a:  $\text{greatest } L \ a \ (\text{Lower } L \ A)$   
 from  $L$  greatest-a have  $La: a \in \text{carrier } L$  by simp  
 from  $L$  inf-of-two-exists greatest-a  
 obtain  $i$  where  $\text{greatest-}i: \text{greatest } L \ i \ (\text{Lower } L \ \{a, x\})$  by blast  
 show  $P \ (\text{THE } g. \text{greatest } L \ g \ (\text{Lower } L \ (\text{insert } x \ A)))$   
 proof (rule theI2)  
 show  $\text{greatest } L \ i \ (\text{Lower } L \ (\text{insert } x \ A))$   
 proof (rule greatest-LowerI)

```

fix z
assume z ∈ insert x A
then show i ⊆ z
proof
  assume z = x then show ?thesis
  by (simp add: greatest-Lower-above [OF greatest-i] L La)
next
  assume z ∈ A
  with L greatest-i greatest-a show ?thesis
  by (rule-tac trans [where y = a]) (auto dest: greatest-Lower-above)
qed
next
fix y
assume y: y ∈ Lower L (insert x A)
show y ⊆ i
proof (rule greatest-le [OF greatest-i], rule Lower-memI)
  fix z
  assume z: z ∈ {a, x}
  then show y ⊆ z
  proof
    have y': y ∈ Lower L A
    apply (rule subsetD [where A = Lower L (insert x A)])
    apply (rule Lower-antimono) apply clarify apply assumption
    done
    assume z = a
    with y' greatest-a show ?thesis by (fast dest: greatest-le)
  next
    assume z ∈ {x}
    with y L show ?thesis by blast
  qed
qed (rule Lower-closed [THEN subsetD])
next
from L show insert x A ⊆ carrier L by simp
from greatest-i show i ∈ carrier L by simp
qed
next
fix g
assume greatest-g: greatest L g (Lower L (insert x A))
show g = i
proof (rule greatest-unique)
  show greatest L i (Lower L (insert x A))
  proof (rule greatest-LowerI)
    fix z
    assume z ∈ insert x A
    then show i ⊆ z
    proof
      assume z = x then show ?thesis
      by (simp add: greatest-Lower-above [OF greatest-i] L La)
    next

```

```

    assume  $z \in A$ 
    with  $L$  greatest- $i$  greatest- $a$  show ?thesis
    by (rule-tac trans [where  $y = a$ ]) (auto dest: greatest-Lower-above)
  qed
next
  fix  $y$ 
  assume  $y: y \in \text{Lower } L \text{ (insert } x \text{ } A)$ 
  show  $y \sqsubseteq i$ 
  proof (rule greatest-le [OF greatest- $i$ ], rule Lower-memI)
    fix  $z$ 
    assume  $z: z \in \{a, x\}$ 
    then show  $y \sqsubseteq z$ 
    proof
      have  $y': y \in \text{Lower } L \text{ } A$ 
      apply (rule subsetD [where  $A = \text{Lower } L \text{ (insert } x \text{ } A)$ ])
      apply (rule Lower-antimono) apply clarify apply assumption
      done
      assume  $z = a$ 
      with  $y'$  greatest- $a$  show ?thesis by (fast dest: greatest-le)
    next
      assume  $z \in \{x\}$ 
      with  $y$   $L$  show ?thesis by blast
    qed
  qed (rule Lower-closed [THEN subsetD])
next
  from  $L$  show  $\text{insert } x \text{ } A \subseteq \text{carrier } L$  by simp
  from greatest- $i$  show  $i \in \text{carrier } L$  by simp
qed
qed
qed
qed

```

**lemma** (in lattice) *finite-inf-greatest*:

$[ [ \text{finite } A; A \subseteq \text{carrier } L; A \sim = \{\} ] ] \implies \text{greatest } L \text{ (}\bigcap A\text{) (Lower } L \text{ } A)$

**proof** (induct set: Finites)

case empty then show ?case by simp

next

case (insert  $x$   $A$ )

show ?case

**proof** (cases  $A = \{\}$ )

case True

with insert show ?thesis by (simp add: inf-of-singletonI)

next

case False

from insert show ?thesis

**proof** (rule-tac inf-insertI)

from False insert show  $\text{greatest } L \text{ (}\bigcap A\text{) (Lower } L \text{ } A)$  by simp

qed simp-all

qed

qed

**lemma** (in lattice) *finite-inf-insertI*:  
 assumes  $P: !!i. \text{greatest } L \ i \ (\text{Lower } L \ (\text{insert } x \ A)) \implies P \ i$   
 and  $xA: \text{finite } A \ x \in \text{carrier } L \ A \subseteq \text{carrier } L$   
 shows  $P \ (\bigcap (\text{insert } x \ A))$   
**proof** (cases  $A = \{\}$ )  
 case *True* with  $P$  and  $xA$  show ?thesis  
 by (simp add: inf-of-singletonI)  
 next  
 case *False* with  $P$  and  $xA$  show ?thesis  
 by (simp add: inf-insertI finite-inf-greatest)  
 qed

**lemma** (in lattice) *finite-inf-closed*:  
 $[\text{finite } A; A \subseteq \text{carrier } L; A \sim \{\}] \implies \bigcap A \in \text{carrier } L$   
**proof** (induct set: *Finites*)  
 case *empty* then show ?case by simp  
 next  
 case *insert* then show ?case  
 by (rule-tac finite-inf-insertI) (simp-all)  
 qed

**lemma** (in lattice) *meet-left*:  
 $[x \in \text{carrier } L; y \in \text{carrier } L] \implies x \sqcap y \sqsubseteq x$   
 by (rule meetI [folded meet-def]) (blast dest: greatest-mem)

**lemma** (in lattice) *meet-right*:  
 $[x \in \text{carrier } L; y \in \text{carrier } L] \implies x \sqcap y \sqsubseteq y$   
 by (rule meetI [folded meet-def]) (blast dest: greatest-mem)

**lemma** (in lattice) *inf-of-two-greatest*:  
 $[x \in \text{carrier } L; y \in \text{carrier } L] \implies$   
 $\text{greatest } L \ (\bigcap \{x, y\}) \ (\text{Lower } L \ \{x, y\})$   
**proof** (unfold inf-def)  
 assume  $L: x \in \text{carrier } L \ y \in \text{carrier } L$   
 with *inf-of-two-exists* obtain  $s$  where  $\text{greatest } L \ s \ (\text{Lower } L \ \{x, y\})$  by fast  
 with  $L$   
 show  $\text{greatest } L \ (\text{THE } xa. \text{greatest } L \ xa \ (\text{Lower } L \ \{x, y\})) \ (\text{Lower } L \ \{x, y\})$   
 by (fast intro: theI2 greatest-unique)  
 qed

**lemma** (in lattice) *meet-le*:  
 assumes  $\text{sub}: z \sqsubseteq x \ z \sqsubseteq y$   
 and  $L: x \in \text{carrier } L \ y \in \text{carrier } L \ z \in \text{carrier } L$   
 shows  $z \sqsubseteq x \sqcap y$   
**proof** (rule meetI)  
 fix  $i$   
 assume  $\text{greatest } L \ i \ (\text{Lower } L \ \{x, y\})$

**with** *sub L* **show**  $z \sqsubseteq i$  **by** (*fast elim: greatest-le intro: Lower-memI*)  
**qed**

**lemma** (*in lattice*) *meet-assoc-lemma*:  
**assumes**  $L: x \in \text{carrier } L \ y \in \text{carrier } L \ z \in \text{carrier } L$   
**shows**  $x \sqcap (y \sqcap z) = \sqcap \{x, y, z\}$   
**proof** (*rule finite-inf-insertI*)

The textbook argument in Jacobson I, p 457

**fix**  $i$   
**assume** *inf: greatest L i (Lower L {x, y, z})*  
**show**  $x \sqcap (y \sqcap z) = i$   
**proof** (*rule anti-sym*)  
**from** *inf L* **show**  $i \sqsubseteq x \sqcap (y \sqcap z)$   
**by** (*fastsimp intro!: meet-le elim: greatest-Lower-above*)  
**next**  
**from** *inf L* **show**  $x \sqcap (y \sqcap z) \sqsubseteq i$   
**by** (*erule-tac greatest-le*)  
*(blast intro!: Lower-memI intro: trans meet-left meet-right meet-closed)*  
**qed** (*simp-all add: L greatest-carrier [OF inf]*)  
**qed** (*simp-all add: L*)

**lemma** *meet-comm*:  
**includes** *struct L*  
**shows**  $x \sqcap y = y \sqcap x$   
**by** (*unfold meet-def*) (*simp add: insert-commute*)

**lemma** (*in lattice*) *meet-assoc*:  
**assumes**  $L: x \in \text{carrier } L \ y \in \text{carrier } L \ z \in \text{carrier } L$   
**shows**  $(x \sqcap y) \sqcap z = x \sqcap (y \sqcap z)$   
**proof** –  
**have**  $(x \sqcap y) \sqcap z = z \sqcap (x \sqcap y)$  **by** (*simp only: meet-comm*)  
**also from**  $L$  **have**  $\dots = \sqcap \{z, x, y\}$  **by** (*simp add: meet-assoc-lemma*)  
**also from**  $L$  **have**  $\dots = \sqcap \{x, y, z\}$  **by** (*simp add: insert-commute*)  
**also from**  $L$  **have**  $\dots = x \sqcap (y \sqcap z)$  **by** (*simp add: meet-assoc-lemma*)  
**finally show** *?thesis* .  
**qed**

### 1.3 Total Orders

**locale** *total-order* = *lattice* +  
**assumes** *total*:  $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } L; y \in \text{carrier } L \rrbracket \implies x \sqsubseteq y \mid y \sqsubseteq x$

Introduction rule: the usual definition of total order

**lemma** (*in partial-order*) *total-orderI*:  
**assumes** *total*:  $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } L; y \in \text{carrier } L \rrbracket \implies x \sqsubseteq y \mid y \sqsubseteq x$   
**shows** *total-order L*  
**proof** (*rule total-order.intro*)  
**show** *lattice-axioms L*



```

proof (rule lattice-axioms.intro)
  fix  $x\ y$ 
  assume  $L: x \in \text{carrier } L \quad y \in \text{carrier } L$ 
  show  $\text{EX } s. \text{least } L\ s \ (\text{Upper } L \ \{x, y\})$ 
  proof –
    note  $\text{total } L$ 
    moreover
    {
      assume  $x \sqsubseteq y$ 
      with  $L$  have  $\text{least } L\ y \ (\text{Upper } L \ \{x, y\})$ 
      by (rule-tac least-UpperI) auto
    }
    moreover
    {
      assume  $y \sqsubseteq x$ 
      with  $L$  have  $\text{least } L\ x \ (\text{Upper } L \ \{x, y\})$ 
      by (rule-tac least-UpperI) auto
    }
    ultimately show ?thesis by blast
  qed
next
  fix  $x\ y$ 
  assume  $L: x \in \text{carrier } L \quad y \in \text{carrier } L$ 
  show  $\text{EX } i. \text{greatest } L\ i \ (\text{Lower } L \ \{x, y\})$ 
  proof –
    note  $\text{total } L$ 
    moreover
    {
      assume  $y \sqsubseteq x$ 
      with  $L$  have  $\text{greatest } L\ y \ (\text{Lower } L \ \{x, y\})$ 
      by (rule-tac greatest-LowerI) auto
    }
    moreover
    {
      assume  $x \sqsubseteq y$ 
      with  $L$  have  $\text{greatest } L\ x \ (\text{Lower } L \ \{x, y\})$ 
      by (rule-tac greatest-LowerI) auto
    }
    ultimately show ?thesis by blast
  qed
qed
qed (assumption | rule total-order-axioms.intro)+

```

## 1.4 Complete lattices

**locale** *complete-lattice* = *lattice* +

**assumes** *sup-exists*:

$[| A \subseteq \text{carrier } L |] \implies \text{EX } s. \text{least } L\ s \ (\text{Upper } L\ A)$

**and** *inf-exists*:

$$[\mid A \subseteq \text{carrier } L \mid] \implies \text{EX } i. \text{ greatest } L \ i \ (\text{Lower } L \ A)$$

Introduction rule: the usual definition of complete lattice

**lemma** (in *partial-order*) *complete-latticeI*:

**assumes** *sup-exists*:

!!A.  $[\mid A \subseteq \text{carrier } L \mid] \implies \text{EX } s. \text{ least } L \ s \ (\text{Upper } L \ A)$

**and** *inf-exists*:

!!A.  $[\mid A \subseteq \text{carrier } L \mid] \implies \text{EX } i. \text{ greatest } L \ i \ (\text{Lower } L \ A)$

**shows** *complete-lattice L*

**proof** (rule *complete-lattice.intro*)

**show** *lattice-axioms L*

**by** (rule *lattice-axioms.intro*) (blast intro: *sup-exists inf-exists*) +

**qed** (assumption | rule *complete-lattice-axioms.intro*) +

**constdefs** (structure *L*)

*top* ::  $\text{--} \implies 'a \ (\top_1)$

$\top == \text{sup } L \ (\text{carrier } L)$

*bottom* ::  $\text{--} \implies 'a \ (\perp_1)$

$\perp == \text{inf } L \ (\text{carrier } L)$

**lemma** (in *complete-lattice*) *supI*:

$[\mid !!l. \text{ least } L \ l \ (\text{Upper } L \ A) \implies P \ l; A \subseteq \text{carrier } L \mid]$

$\implies P \ (\bigsqcup A)$

**proof** (unfold *sup-def*)

**assume** *L*:  $A \subseteq \text{carrier } L$

**and** *P*:  $!!l. \text{ least } L \ l \ (\text{Upper } L \ A) \implies P \ l$

**with** *sup-exists* **obtain** *s* **where** *least L s (Upper L A)* **by** *blast*

**with** *L* **show** *P (THE l. least L l (Upper L A))*

**by** (fast intro: *theI2 least-unique P*)

**qed**

**lemma** (in *complete-lattice*) *sup-closed [simp]*:

$A \subseteq \text{carrier } L \implies \bigsqcup A \in \text{carrier } L$

**by** (rule *supI*) *simp-all*

**lemma** (in *complete-lattice*) *top-closed [simp, intro]*:

$\top \in \text{carrier } L$

**by** (unfold *top-def*) *simp*

**lemma** (in *complete-lattice*) *infI*:

$[\mid !!i. \text{ greatest } L \ i \ (\text{Lower } L \ A) \implies P \ i; A \subseteq \text{carrier } L \mid]$

$\implies P \ (\bigsqcap A)$

**proof** (unfold *inf-def*)

**assume** *L*:  $A \subseteq \text{carrier } L$

**and** *P*:  $!!i. \text{ greatest } L \ i \ (\text{Lower } L \ A) \implies P \ i$

**with** *inf-exists* **obtain** *s* **where** *greatest L s (Lower L A)* **by** *blast*

**with** *L* **show** *P (THE i. greatest L i (Lower L A))*

**by** (*fast intro: theI2 greatest-unique P*)  
**qed**

**lemma** (*in complete-lattice*) *inf-closed* [*simp*]:  
 $A \subseteq \text{carrier } L \implies \bigcap A \in \text{carrier } L$   
**by** (*rule infI*) *simp-all*

**lemma** (*in complete-lattice*) *bottom-closed* [*simp, intro*]:  
 $\perp \in \text{carrier } L$   
**by** (*unfold bottom-def*) *simp*

Jacobson: Theorem 8.1

**lemma** *Lower-empty* [*simp*]:  
 $\text{Lower } L \ \{\} = \text{carrier } L$   
**by** (*unfold Lower-def*) *simp*

**lemma** *Upper-empty* [*simp*]:  
 $\text{Upper } L \ \{\} = \text{carrier } L$   
**by** (*unfold Upper-def*) *simp*

**theorem** (*in partial-order*) *complete-lattice-criterion1*:  
**assumes** *top-exists*:  $EX \ g. \text{greatest } L \ g \ (\text{carrier } L)$   
**and** *inf-exists*:  
 $!!A. [\mid A \subseteq \text{carrier } L; A \sim \{\}] \implies EX \ i. \text{greatest } L \ i \ (\text{Lower } L \ A)$   
**shows** *complete-lattice*  $L$

**proof** (*rule complete-latticeI*)  
**from** *top-exists* **obtain** *top* **where**  $\text{top: greatest } L \ \text{top} \ (\text{carrier } L) \ ..$   
**fix**  $A$   
**assume**  $L: A \subseteq \text{carrier } L$   
**let**  $?B = \text{Upper } L \ A$   
**from**  $L \ \text{top}$  **have**  $\text{top} \in ?B$  **by** (*fast intro!: Upper-memI intro: greatest-le*)  
**then** **have** *B-non-empty*:  $?B \sim \{\}$  **by** *fast*  
**have** *B-L*:  $?B \subseteq \text{carrier } L$  **by** *simp*  
**from** *inf-exists* [*OF B-L B-non-empty*]  
**obtain**  $b$  **where** *b-inf-B*:  $\text{greatest } L \ b \ (\text{Lower } L \ ?B) \ ..$   
**have** *least L b* ( $\text{Upper } L \ A$ )  
**apply** (*rule least-UpperI*)  
**apply** (*rule greatest-le* [**where**  $A = \text{Lower } L \ ?B$ ])  
**apply** (*rule b-inf-B*)  
**apply** (*rule Lower-memI*)  
**apply** (*erule UpperD*)  
**apply** *assumption*  
**apply** (*rule L*)  
**apply** (*fast intro: L [THEN subsetD]*)  
**apply** (*erule greatest-Lower-above* [*OF b-inf-B*])  
**apply** *simp*  
**apply** (*rule L*)  
**apply** (*rule greatest-carrier* [*OF b-inf-B*])  
**done**

```

    then show  $EX\ s.\ least\ L\ s\ (Upper\ L\ A) \ ..$ 
next
  fix  $A$ 
  assume  $L: A \subseteq carrier\ L$ 
  show  $EX\ i.\ greatest\ L\ i\ (Lower\ L\ A)$ 
  proof (cases  $A = \{\}$ )
    case True then show ?thesis
      by (simp add: top-exists)
  next
    case False with  $L$  show ?thesis
      by (rule inf-exists)
  qed
qed

```

## 1.5 Examples

### 1.5.1 Powerset of a set is a complete lattice

```

theorem powerset-is-complete-lattice:
  complete-lattice (| carrier = Pow  $A$ , le =  $op \subseteq$  |)
  (is complete-lattice ?L)
proof (rule partial-order.complete-latticeI)
  show partial-order ?L
    by (rule partial-order.intro) auto
next
  fix  $B$ 
  assume  $B \subseteq carrier\ ?L$ 
  then have least ?L ( $\bigcup B$ ) (Upper ?L  $B$ )
    by (fastsimp intro!: least-UpperI simp: Upper-def)
  then show  $EX\ s.\ least\ ?L\ s\ (Upper\ ?L\ B) \ ..$ 
next
  fix  $B$ 
  assume  $B \subseteq carrier\ ?L$ 
  then have greatest ?L ( $\bigcap B \cap A$ ) (Lower ?L  $B$ )
    by (fastsimp intro!: greatest-LowerI simp: Lower-def)
  then show  $EX\ i.\ greatest\ ?L\ i\ (Lower\ ?L\ B) \ ..$ 
qed

```

$\bigcap B$  is not the infimum of  $B$ :  $\bigcap \{\} = UNIV$  which is in general bigger than  $A$ !

```

    by (fastsimp intro!: greatest-LowerI simp: Lower-def)
  then show  $EX\ i.\ greatest\ ?L\ i\ (Lower\ ?L\ B) \ ..$ 
qed

```

An other example, that of the lattice of subgroups of a group, can be found in Group theory (Section 3.9).

end

## 2 Group: Groups

```

theory Group imports FuncSet Lattice begin

```

### 3 Monoids and Groups

Definitions follow [2].

#### 3.1 Definitions

**record** *'a monoid* = *'a partial-object* +  
*mult* :: [*'a*, *'a*]  $\Rightarrow$  *'a* (**infixl**  $\otimes_1$  70)  
*one* :: *'a* (**1**<sub>1</sub>)

**constdefs** (**structure** *G*)

*m-inv* :: (*'a*, *'b*) *monoid-scheme*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a* (*inv1* - [81] 80)  
*inv* *x* == (*THE* *y*. *y*  $\in$  *carrier G* & *x*  $\otimes$  *y* = **1** & *y*  $\otimes$  *x* = **1**)

*Units* :: -  $\Rightarrow$  *'a set*

— The set of invertible elements

*Units G* == {*y*. *y*  $\in$  *carrier G* & ( $\exists x \in$  *carrier G*. *x*  $\otimes$  *y* = **1** & *y*  $\otimes$  *x* = **1**)}

**consts**

*pow* :: [*'a*, *'m*) *monoid-scheme*, *'a*, *'b::number*]  $\Rightarrow$  *'a* (**infixr** *'(^)*<sub>1</sub> 75)

**defs** (**overloaded**)

*nat-pow-def*: *pow G a n* == *nat-rec* **1**<sub>*G*</sub> (%*u b*. *b*  $\otimes_G$  *a*) *n*

*int-pow-def*: *pow G a z* ==

*let* *p* = *nat-rec* **1**<sub>*G*</sub> (%*u b*. *b*  $\otimes_G$  *a*)

*in if* *neg z* *then inv*<sub>*G*</sub> (*p* (*nat* (-*z*))) *else p* (*nat z*)

**locale** *monoid* = *struct G* +

**assumes** *m-closed* [*intro*, *simp*]:

$\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \Longrightarrow x \otimes y \in \text{carrier } G$

**and** *m-assoc*:

$\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G; z \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket$

$\Longrightarrow (x \otimes y) \otimes z = x \otimes (y \otimes z)$

**and** *one-closed* [*intro*, *simp*]: **1**  $\in$  *carrier G*

**and** *l-one* [*simp*]:  $x \in \text{carrier } G \Longrightarrow \mathbf{1} \otimes x = x$

**and** *r-one* [*simp*]:  $x \in \text{carrier } G \Longrightarrow x \otimes \mathbf{1} = x$

**lemma** *monoidI*:

**includes** *struct G*

**assumes** *m-closed*:

$\llbracket x y. \llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \Longrightarrow x \otimes y \in \text{carrier } G$

**and** *one-closed*: **1**  $\in$  *carrier G*

**and** *m-assoc*:

$\llbracket x y z. \llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G; z \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \Longrightarrow$

$(x \otimes y) \otimes z = x \otimes (y \otimes z)$

**and** *l-one*:  $\llbracket x. x \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \Longrightarrow \mathbf{1} \otimes x = x$

**and** *r-one*:  $\llbracket x. x \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \Longrightarrow x \otimes \mathbf{1} = x$

**shows** *monoid G*

**by** (*fast intro!*: *monoid.intro intro: prems*)

```

lemma (in monoid) Units-closed [dest]:
   $x \in \text{Units } G \implies x \in \text{carrier } G$ 
  by (unfold Units-def) fast

lemma (in monoid) inv-unique:
  assumes  $eq: y \otimes x = \mathbf{1} \quad x \otimes y' = \mathbf{1}$ 
  and  $G: x \in \text{carrier } G \quad y \in \text{carrier } G \quad y' \in \text{carrier } G$ 
  shows  $y = y'$ 
proof –
  from  $G \text{ eq}$  have  $y = y \otimes (x \otimes y')$  by simp
  also from  $G$  have  $\dots = (y \otimes x) \otimes y'$  by (simp add: m-assoc)
  also from  $G \text{ eq}$  have  $\dots = y'$  by simp
  finally show ?thesis .
qed

lemma (in monoid) Units-one-closed [intro, simp]:
   $\mathbf{1} \in \text{Units } G$ 
  by (unfold Units-def) auto

lemma (in monoid) Units-inv-closed [intro, simp]:
   $x \in \text{Units } G \implies \text{inv } x \in \text{carrier } G$ 
  apply (unfold Units-def m-inv-def, auto)
  apply (rule theI2, fast)
  apply (fast intro: inv-unique, fast)
  done

lemma (in monoid) Units-l-inv:
   $x \in \text{Units } G \implies \text{inv } x \otimes x = \mathbf{1}$ 
  apply (unfold Units-def m-inv-def, auto)
  apply (rule theI2, fast)
  apply (fast intro: inv-unique, fast)
  done

lemma (in monoid) Units-r-inv:
   $x \in \text{Units } G \implies x \otimes \text{inv } x = \mathbf{1}$ 
  apply (unfold Units-def m-inv-def, auto)
  apply (rule theI2, fast)
  apply (fast intro: inv-unique, fast)
  done

lemma (in monoid) Units-inv-Units [intro, simp]:
   $x \in \text{Units } G \implies \text{inv } x \in \text{Units } G$ 
proof –
  assume  $x: x \in \text{Units } G$ 
  show  $\text{inv } x \in \text{Units } G$ 
  by (auto simp add: Units-def
    intro: Units-l-inv Units-r-inv x Units-closed [OF x])
qed

```

**lemma** (in monoid) *Units-l-cancel* [simp]:  
 $\llbracket x \in \text{Units } G; y \in \text{carrier } G; z \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(x \otimes y = x \otimes z) = (y = z)$   
**proof**  
 assume eq:  $x \otimes y = x \otimes z$   
 and  $G: x \in \text{Units } G \ y \in \text{carrier } G \ z \in \text{carrier } G$   
 then have  $(\text{inv } x \otimes x) \otimes y = (\text{inv } x \otimes x) \otimes z$   
 by (simp add: m-*assoc* Units-*closed*)  
 with  $G$  show  $y = z$  by (simp add: Units-*l-inv*)  
**next**  
 assume eq:  $y = z$   
 and  $G: x \in \text{Units } G \ y \in \text{carrier } G \ z \in \text{carrier } G$   
 then show  $x \otimes y = x \otimes z$  by simp  
**qed**

**lemma** (in monoid) *Units-inv-inv* [simp]:  
 $x \in \text{Units } G \implies \text{inv } (\text{inv } x) = x$   
**proof** –  
 assume  $x: x \in \text{Units } G$   
 then have  $\text{inv } x \otimes \text{inv } (\text{inv } x) = \text{inv } x \otimes x$   
 by (simp add: Units-*l-inv* Units-*r-inv*)  
 with  $x$  show ?thesis by (simp add: Units-*closed*)  
**qed**

**lemma** (in monoid) *inv-inj-on-Units*:  
 $\text{inj-on } (m\text{-inv } G) (\text{Units } G)$   
**proof** (rule *inj-onI*)  
 fix  $x \ y$   
 assume  $G: x \in \text{Units } G \ y \in \text{Units } G$  and eq:  $\text{inv } x = \text{inv } y$   
 then have  $\text{inv } (\text{inv } x) = \text{inv } (\text{inv } y)$  by simp  
 with  $G$  show  $x = y$  by simp  
**qed**

**lemma** (in monoid) *Units-inv-comm*:  
 assumes  $\text{inv}: x \otimes y = \mathbf{1}$   
 and  $G: x \in \text{Units } G \ y \in \text{Units } G$   
 shows  $y \otimes x = \mathbf{1}$   
**proof** –  
 from  $G$  have  $x \otimes y \otimes x = x \otimes \mathbf{1}$  by (auto simp add: inv Units-*closed*)  
 with  $G$  show ?thesis by (simp del: *r-one* add: m-*assoc* Units-*closed*)  
**qed**

Power

**lemma** (in monoid) *nat-pow-closed* [intro, simp]:  
 $x \in \text{carrier } G \implies x \ (\wedge) \ (n::\text{nat}) \in \text{carrier } G$   
 by (induct  $n$ ) (simp-all add: nat-*pow-def*)

**lemma** (in monoid) *nat-pow-0* [simp]:

```

x ( ^ ) ( 0 :: nat ) = 1
by ( simp add: nat-pow-def )

```

```

lemma (in monoid) nat-pow-Suc [simp]:
  x ( ^ ) ( Suc n ) = x ( ^ ) n  $\otimes$  x
by ( simp add: nat-pow-def )

```

```

lemma (in monoid) nat-pow-one [simp]:
  1 ( ^ ) ( n :: nat ) = 1
by ( induct n ) simp-all

```

```

lemma (in monoid) nat-pow-mult:
  x  $\in$  carrier G ==> x ( ^ ) ( n :: nat )  $\otimes$  x ( ^ ) m = x ( ^ ) ( n + m )
by ( induct m ) ( simp-all add: m-assoc [ THEN sym ] )

```

```

lemma (in monoid) nat-pow-pow:
  x  $\in$  carrier G ==> ( x ( ^ ) n ) ( ^ ) m = x ( ^ ) ( n * m :: nat )
by ( induct m ) ( simp, simp add: nat-pow-mult add-commute )

```

A group is a monoid all of whose elements are invertible.

```

locale group = monoid +
  assumes Units: carrier G <= Units G

```

```

lemma (in group) is-group: group G
by ( rule group.intro [ OF prems ] )

```

```

theorem groupI:
  includes struct G
  assumes m-closed [simp]:
    !!x y. [ [ x  $\in$  carrier G; y  $\in$  carrier G ] ] ==> x  $\otimes$  y  $\in$  carrier G
  and one-closed [simp]: 1  $\in$  carrier G
  and m-assoc:
    !!x y z. [ [ x  $\in$  carrier G; y  $\in$  carrier G; z  $\in$  carrier G ] ] ==>
      ( x  $\otimes$  y )  $\otimes$  z = x  $\otimes$  ( y  $\otimes$  z )
  and l-one [simp]: !!x. x  $\in$  carrier G ==> 1  $\otimes$  x = x
  and l-inv-ex: !!x. x  $\in$  carrier G ==>  $\exists$  y  $\in$  carrier G. y  $\otimes$  x = 1
  shows group G
proof -
  have l-cancel [simp]:
    !!x y z. [ [ x  $\in$  carrier G; y  $\in$  carrier G; z  $\in$  carrier G ] ] ==>
      ( x  $\otimes$  y ) = x  $\otimes$  z ) = ( y = z )
  proof
    fix x y z
    assume eq: x  $\otimes$  y = x  $\otimes$  z
    and G: x  $\in$  carrier G y  $\in$  carrier G z  $\in$  carrier G
    with l-inv-ex obtain x-inv where xG: x-inv  $\in$  carrier G
    and l-inv: x-inv  $\otimes$  x = 1 by fast
    from G eq xG have ( x-inv  $\otimes$  x )  $\otimes$  y = ( x-inv  $\otimes$  x )  $\otimes$  z

```



```

    by (simp add: m-assoc)
  with G show  $y = z$  by (simp add: l-inv)
next
  fix  $x\ y\ z$ 
  assume eq:  $y = z$ 
  and G:  $x \in \text{carrier } G\ y \in \text{carrier } G\ z \in \text{carrier } G$ 
  then show  $x \otimes y = x \otimes z$  by simp
qed
have r-one:
  !! $x$ .  $x \in \text{carrier } G \implies x \otimes \mathbf{1} = x$ 
proof -
  fix  $x$ 
  assume x:  $x \in \text{carrier } G$ 
  with l-inv-ex obtain  $x\text{-inv}$  where  $xG$ :  $x\text{-inv} \in \text{carrier } G$ 
  and l-inv:  $x\text{-inv} \otimes x = \mathbf{1}$  by fast
  from  $x\ xG$  have  $x\text{-inv} \otimes (x \otimes \mathbf{1}) = x\text{-inv} \otimes x$ 
  by (simp add: m-assoc [symmetric] l-inv)
  with  $x\ xG$  show  $x \otimes \mathbf{1} = x$  by simp
qed
have inv-ex:
  !! $x$ .  $x \in \text{carrier } G \implies \exists y \in \text{carrier } G. y \otimes x = \mathbf{1} \ \&\ x \otimes y = \mathbf{1}$ 
proof -
  fix  $x$ 
  assume x:  $x \in \text{carrier } G$ 
  with l-inv-ex obtain  $y$  where  $y$ :  $y \in \text{carrier } G$ 
  and l-inv:  $y \otimes x = \mathbf{1}$  by fast
  from  $x\ y$  have  $y \otimes (x \otimes y) = y \otimes \mathbf{1}$ 
  by (simp add: m-assoc [symmetric] l-inv r-one)
  with  $x\ y$  have r-inv:  $x \otimes y = \mathbf{1}$ 
  by simp
  from  $x\ y$  show  $\exists y \in \text{carrier } G. y \otimes x = \mathbf{1} \ \&\ x \otimes y = \mathbf{1}$ 
  by (fast intro: l-inv r-inv)
qed
then have carrier-subset-Units:  $\text{carrier } G \leq \text{Units } G$ 
  by (unfold Units-def) fast
show ?thesis
  by (fast intro!: group.intro monoid.intro group-axioms.intro
    carrier-subset-Units intro: prems r-one)
qed

lemma (in monoid) monoid-groupI:
  assumes l-inv-ex:
    !! $x$ .  $x \in \text{carrier } G \implies \exists y \in \text{carrier } G. y \otimes x = \mathbf{1}$ 
  shows group  $G$ 
  by (rule groupI) (auto intro: m-assoc l-inv-ex)

lemma (in group) Units-eq [simp]:
  Units  $G = \text{carrier } G$ 
proof

```

```

  show Units G <= carrier G by fast
next
  show carrier G <= Units G by (rule Units)
qed

```

```

lemma (in group) inv-closed [intro, simp]:
  x ∈ carrier G ==> inv x ∈ carrier G
  using Units-inv-closed by simp

```

```

lemma (in group) l-inv [simp]:
  x ∈ carrier G ==> inv x ⊗ x = 1
  using Units-l-inv by simp

```

### 3.2 Cancellation Laws and Basic Properties

```

lemma (in group) l-cancel [simp]:
  [| x ∈ carrier G; y ∈ carrier G; z ∈ carrier G |] ==>
  (x ⊗ y = x ⊗ z) = (y = z)
  using Units-l-inv by simp

```

```

lemma (in group) r-inv [simp]:
  x ∈ carrier G ==> x ⊗ inv x = 1
proof -
  assume x: x ∈ carrier G
  then have inv x ⊗ (x ⊗ inv x) = inv x ⊗ 1
  by (simp add: m-assoc [symmetric] l-inv)
  with x show ?thesis by (simp del: r-one)
qed

```

```

lemma (in group) r-cancel [simp]:
  [| x ∈ carrier G; y ∈ carrier G; z ∈ carrier G |] ==>
  (y ⊗ x = z ⊗ x) = (y = z)
proof
  assume eq: y ⊗ x = z ⊗ x
  and G: x ∈ carrier G y ∈ carrier G z ∈ carrier G
  then have y ⊗ (x ⊗ inv x) = z ⊗ (x ⊗ inv x)
  by (simp add: m-assoc [symmetric] del: r-inv)
  with G show y = z by simp
next
  assume eq: y = z
  and G: x ∈ carrier G y ∈ carrier G z ∈ carrier G
  then show y ⊗ x = z ⊗ x by simp
qed

```

```

lemma (in group) inv-one [simp]:
  inv 1 = 1
proof -
  have inv 1 = 1 ⊗ (inv 1) by (simp del: r-inv)
  moreover have ... = 1 by simp

```

finally show ?thesis .  
qed

lemma (in group) inv-inv [simp]:  
 $x \in \text{carrier } G \implies \text{inv } (\text{inv } x) = x$   
 using Units-inv-inv by simp

lemma (in group) inv-inj:  
 $\text{inj-on } (m\text{-inv } G) (\text{carrier } G)$   
 using inv-inj-on-Units by simp

lemma (in group) inv-mult-group:  
 $[[x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G]] \implies \text{inv } (x \otimes y) = \text{inv } y \otimes \text{inv } x$   
 proof -  
 assume  $G: x \in \text{carrier } G \ y \in \text{carrier } G$   
 then have  $\text{inv } (x \otimes y) \otimes (x \otimes y) = (\text{inv } y \otimes \text{inv } x) \otimes (x \otimes y)$   
 by (simp add: m-assoc l-inv) (simp add: m-assoc [symmetric])  
 with  $G$  show ?thesis by (simp del: l-inv)  
 qed

lemma (in group) inv-comm:  
 $[[x \otimes y = \mathbf{1}; x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G]] \implies y \otimes x = \mathbf{1}$   
 by (rule Units-inv-comm) auto

lemma (in group) inv-equality:  
 $[[y \otimes x = \mathbf{1}; x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G]] \implies \text{inv } x = y$   
 apply (simp add: m-inv-def)  
 apply (rule the-equality)  
 apply (simp add: inv-comm [of  $y \ x$ ])  
 apply (rule r-cancel [THEN iffD1], auto)  
 done

Power

lemma (in group) int-pow-def2:  
 $a (^) (z::\text{int}) = (\text{if } \text{neg } z \text{ then } \text{inv } (a (^) (\text{nat } (-z))) \text{ else } a (^) (\text{nat } z))$   
 by (simp add: int-pow-def nat-pow-def Let-def)

lemma (in group) int-pow-0 [simp]:  
 $x (^) (0::\text{int}) = \mathbf{1}$   
 by (simp add: int-pow-def2)

lemma (in group) int-pow-one [simp]:  
 $\mathbf{1} (^) (z::\text{int}) = \mathbf{1}$   
 by (simp add: int-pow-def2)

### 3.3 Subgroups

locale subgroup = var  $H$  + struct  $G$  +  
 assumes subset:  $H \subseteq \text{carrier } G$

```

and m-closed [intro, simp]:  $\llbracket x \in H; y \in H \rrbracket \implies x \otimes y \in H$ 
and one-closed [simp]:  $\mathbf{1} \in H$ 
and m-inv-closed [intro, simp]:  $x \in H \implies \text{inv } x \in H$ 

declare (in subgroup) group.intro [intro]

```

```

lemma (in subgroup) mem-carrier [simp]:
   $x \in H \implies x \in \text{carrier } G$ 
using subset by blast

```

```

lemma subgroup-imp-subset:
   $\text{subgroup } H \ G \implies H \subseteq \text{carrier } G$ 
by (rule subgroup.subset)

```

```

lemma (in subgroup) subgroup-is-group [intro]:
  includes group G
  shows group ( $G(\text{carrier} := H)$ )
  by (rule groupI) (auto intro: m-assoc l-inv mem-carrier)

```

Since  $H$  is nonempty, it contains some element  $x$ . Since it is closed under inverse, it contains  $\text{inv } x$ . Since it is closed under product, it contains  $x \otimes \text{inv } x = \mathbf{1}$ .

```

lemma (in group) one-in-subset:
   $\llbracket H \subseteq \text{carrier } G; H \neq \{\}; \forall a \in H. \text{inv } a \in H; \forall a \in H. \forall b \in H. a \otimes b \in H \rrbracket$ 
   $\implies \mathbf{1} \in H$ 
by (force simp add: l-inv)

```

A characterization of subgroups: closed, non-empty subset.

```

lemma (in group) subgroupI:
  assumes subset:  $H \subseteq \text{carrier } G$  and non-empty:  $H \neq \{\}$ 
  and inv:  $\forall a. a \in H \implies \text{inv } a \in H$ 
  and mult:  $\forall a \ b. [a \in H; b \in H] \implies a \otimes b \in H$ 
  shows subgroup  $H \ G$ 
proof (simp add: subgroup-def prems)
  show  $\mathbf{1} \in H$  by (rule one-in-subset) (auto simp only: prems)
qed

```

```

declare monoid.one-closed [iff] group.inv-closed [simp]
  monoid.l-one [simp] monoid.r-one [simp] group.inv-inv [simp]

```

```

lemma subgroup-nonempty:
   $\sim \text{subgroup } \{\} \ G$ 
by (blast dest: subgroup.one-closed)

```

```

lemma (in subgroup) finite-imp-card-positive:
   $\text{finite } (\text{carrier } G) \implies 0 < \text{card } H$ 
proof (rule classical)
  assume  $\text{finite } (\text{carrier } G) \sim 0 < \text{card } H$ 
  then have finite  $H$  by (blast intro: finite-subset [OF subset])

```

```

with prems have subgroup {} G by simp
with subgroup-nonempty show ?thesis by contradiction
qed

```

### 3.4 Direct Products

**constdefs**

```

DirProd :: -  $\Rightarrow$  -  $\Rightarrow$  ('a  $\times$  'b) monoid (infixr  $\times\times$  80)
G  $\times\times$  H  $\equiv$  ( $\lambda$ carrier = carrier G  $\times$  carrier H,
                $\lambda$ mult = ( $\lambda$ (g, h) (g', h'). (g  $\otimes_G$  g', h  $\otimes_H$  h')),
                $\lambda$ one = (1G, 1H))

```

**lemma** *DirProd-monoid*:

```

includes monoid G + monoid H
shows monoid (G  $\times\times$  H)

```

**proof** –

```

from prems
show ?thesis by (unfold monoid-def DirProd-def, auto)

```

**qed**

Does not use the previous result because it’s easier just to use *auto*.

**lemma** *DirProd-group*:

```

includes group G + group H
shows group (G  $\times\times$  H)
by (rule groupI)
   (auto intro: G.m-assoc H.m-assoc G.l-inv H.l-inv
    simp add: DirProd-def)

```

**lemma** *carrier-DirProd* [*simp*]:

```

   carrier (G  $\times\times$  H) = carrier G  $\times$  carrier H
by (simp add: DirProd-def)

```

**lemma** *one-DirProd* [*simp*]:

```

   1G  $\times\times$  H = (1G, 1H)
by (simp add: DirProd-def)

```

**lemma** *mult-DirProd* [*simp*]:

```

   (g, h)  $\otimes_{(G \times\times H)}$  (g', h') = (g  $\otimes_G$  g', h  $\otimes_H$  h')
by (simp add: DirProd-def)

```

**lemma** *inv-DirProd* [*simp*]:

```

includes group G + group H
assumes g: g  $\in$  carrier G
and h: h  $\in$  carrier H
shows m-inv (G  $\times\times$  H) (g, h) = (invG g, invH h)
apply (rule group.inv-equality [OF DirProd-group])
apply (simp-all add: prems group-def group.l-inv)
done

```

This alternative proof of the previous result demonstrates *interpret*. It uses

*Prod.inv-equality* (available after *interpret*) instead of *group.inv-equality* [*OF DirProd-group*].

```

lemma
  includes group  $G$  + group  $H$ 
  assumes  $g: g \in \text{carrier } G$ 
    and  $h: h \in \text{carrier } H$ 
  shows  $m\text{-inv } (G \times \times H) (g, h) = (\text{inv}_G g, \text{inv}_H h)$ 
proof –
  interpret Prod: group [ $G \times \times H$ ]
    by (auto intro: DirProd-group group.intro group.axioms prems)
  show ?thesis by (simp add: Prod.inv-equality  $g h$ )
qed

```

### 3.5 Homomorphisms and Isomorphisms

```

constdefs (structure  $G$  and  $H$ )
   $hom :: - \Rightarrow - \Rightarrow ('a \Rightarrow 'b) \text{ set}$ 
   $hom\ G\ H ==$ 
    { $h. h \in \text{carrier } G \rightarrow \text{carrier } H \ \&$ 
      ( $\forall x \in \text{carrier } G. \forall y \in \text{carrier } G. h (x \otimes_G y) = h x \otimes_H h y$ )}
```

```

lemma hom-mult:
  [ $h \in hom\ G\ H; x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G$ ]
   $\implies h (x \otimes_G y) = h x \otimes_H h y$ 
by (simp add: hom-def)

```

```

lemma hom-closed:
  [ $h \in hom\ G\ H; x \in \text{carrier } G$ ]  $\implies h x \in \text{carrier } H$ 
by (auto simp add: hom-def funcset-mem)

```

```

lemma (in group) hom-compose:
  [ $h \in hom\ G\ H; i \in hom\ H\ I$ ]  $\implies compose (\text{carrier } G) i h \in hom\ G\ I$ 
apply (auto simp add: hom-def funcset-compose)
apply (simp add: compose-def funcset-mem)
done

```

### 3.6 Isomorphisms

```

constdefs
   $iso :: - \Rightarrow - \Rightarrow ('a \Rightarrow 'b) \text{ set}$  (infixr  $\cong$  60)
   $G \cong H == \{h. h \in hom\ G\ H \ \& \text{bij-betw } h (\text{carrier } G) (\text{carrier } H)\}$ 

```

```

lemma iso-refl:  $(\%x. x) \in G \cong G$ 
by (simp add: iso-def hom-def inj-on-def bij-betw-def Pi-def)

```

```

lemma (in group) iso-sym:
   $h \in G \cong H \implies Inv (\text{carrier } G) h \in H \cong G$ 
apply (simp add: iso-def bij-betw-Inv)
apply (subgoal-tac  $Inv (\text{carrier } G) h \in \text{carrier } H \rightarrow \text{carrier } G$ )

```

```

prefer 2 apply (simp add: bij-betw-imp-funcset [OF bij-betw-Inv])
apply (simp add: hom-def bij-betw-def Inv-f-eq funcset-mem f-Inv-f)
done

```

```

lemma (in group) iso-trans:
  [|h ∈ G ≅ H; i ∈ H ≅ I|] ==> (compose (carrier G) i h) ∈ G ≅ I
by (auto simp add: iso-def hom-compose bij-betw-compose)

```

```

lemma DirProd-commute-iso:
  shows (λ(x,y). (y,x)) ∈ (G ×× H) ≅ (H ×× G)
by (auto simp add: iso-def hom-def inj-on-def bij-betw-def Pi-def)

```

```

lemma DirProd-assoc-iso:
  shows (λ(x,y,z). (x,(y,z))) ∈ (G ×× H ×× I) ≅ (G ×× (H ×× I))
by (auto simp add: iso-def hom-def inj-on-def bij-betw-def Pi-def)

```

Basis for homomorphism proofs: we assume two groups  $G$  and  $H$ , with a homomorphism  $h$  between them

```

locale group-hom = group G + group H + var h +
  assumes homh: h ∈ hom G H
  notes hom-mult [simp] = hom-mult [OF homh]
  and hom-closed [simp] = hom-closed [OF homh]

```

```

lemma (in group-hom) one-closed [simp]:
  h 1 ∈ carrier H
by simp

```

```

lemma (in group-hom) hom-one [simp]:
  h 1 = 1H
proof –
  have h 1 ⊗H 1H = h 1 ⊗H h 1
    by (simp add: hom-mult [symmetric] del: hom-mult)
  then show ?thesis by (simp del: r-one)
qed

```

```

lemma (in group-hom) inv-closed [simp]:
  x ∈ carrier G ==> h (inv x) ∈ carrier H
by simp

```

```

lemma (in group-hom) hom-inv [simp]:
  x ∈ carrier G ==> h (inv x) = invH (h x)
proof –
  assume x: x ∈ carrier G
  then have h x ⊗H h (inv x) = 1H
    by (simp add: hom-mult [symmetric] del: hom-mult)
  also from x have ... = h x ⊗H invH (h x)
    by (simp add: hom-mult [symmetric] del: hom-mult)
  finally have h x ⊗H h (inv x) = h x ⊗H invH (h x) .
  with x show ?thesis by (simp del: H.r-inv)

```

qed

### 3.7 Commutative Structures

Naming convention: multiplicative structures that are commutative are called *commutative*, additive structures are called *Abelian*.

### 3.8 Definition

**locale** *comm-monoid* = *monoid* +

**assumes** *m-comm*:  $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies x \otimes y = y \otimes x$

**lemma** (in *comm-monoid*) *m-lcomm*:

$\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G; z \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies$

$x \otimes (y \otimes z) = y \otimes (x \otimes z)$

**proof** –

**assume** *xyz*:  $x \in \text{carrier } G \ y \in \text{carrier } G \ z \in \text{carrier } G$

**from** *xyz* **have**  $x \otimes (y \otimes z) = (x \otimes y) \otimes z$  **by** (*simp add: m-assoc*)

**also from** *xyz* **have**  $\dots = (y \otimes x) \otimes z$  **by** (*simp add: m-comm*)

**also from** *xyz* **have**  $\dots = y \otimes (x \otimes z)$  **by** (*simp add: m-assoc*)

**finally show** *?thesis* .

qed

**lemmas** (in *comm-monoid*) *m-ac* = *m-assoc m-comm m-lcomm*

**lemma** *comm-monoidI*:

**includes** *struct G*

**assumes** *m-closed*:

$\llbracket x \ y. \llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies x \otimes y \in \text{carrier } G$

**and** *one-closed*:  $\mathbf{1} \in \text{carrier } G$

**and** *m-assoc*:

$\llbracket x \ y \ z. \llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G; z \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies$

$(x \otimes y) \otimes z = x \otimes (y \otimes z)$

**and** *l-one*:  $\llbracket x. x \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies \mathbf{1} \otimes x = x$

**and** *m-comm*:

$\llbracket x \ y. \llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies x \otimes y = y \otimes x$

**shows** *comm-monoid G*

**using** *l-one*

**by** (*auto intro!*: *comm-monoid.intro comm-monoid-axioms.intro monoid.intro*  
*intro: prems simp: m-closed one-closed m-comm*)

**lemma** (in *monoid*) *monoid-comm-monoidI*:

**assumes** *m-comm*:

$\llbracket x \ y. \llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies x \otimes y = y \otimes x$

**shows** *comm-monoid G*

**by** (*rule comm-monoidI*) (*auto intro: m-assoc m-comm*)



**lemma** (in *comm-monoid*) *nat-pow-distr*:  
 $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(x \otimes y) (\wedge) (n::\text{nat}) = x (\wedge) n \otimes y (\wedge) n$   
**by** (*induct n*) (*simp, simp add: m-ac*)

**locale** *comm-group* = *comm-monoid* + *group*

**lemma** (in *group*) *group-comm-groupI*:  
**assumes** *m-comm*:  $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies$   
 $x \otimes y = y \otimes x$   
**shows** *comm-group* *G*  
**by** (*fast intro: comm-group.intro comm-monoid-axioms.intro*  
*is-group prems*)

**lemma** *comm-groupI*:  
**includes** *struct* *G*  
**assumes** *m-closed*:  
 $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies x \otimes y \in \text{carrier } G$   
**and** *one-closed*:  $\mathbf{1} \in \text{carrier } G$   
**and** *m-assoc*:  
 $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G; z \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(x \otimes y) \otimes z = x \otimes (y \otimes z)$   
**and** *m-comm*:  
 $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies x \otimes y = y \otimes x$   
**and** *l-one*:  $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies \mathbf{1} \otimes x = x$   
**and** *l-inv-ex*:  $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies \exists y \in \text{carrier } G. y \otimes x = \mathbf{1}$   
**shows** *comm-group* *G*  
**by** (*fast intro: group.group-comm-groupI groupI prems*)

**lemma** (in *comm-group*) *inv-mult*:  
 $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies \text{inv } (x \otimes y) = \text{inv } x \otimes \text{inv } y$   
**by** (*simp add: m-ac inv-mult-group*)

### 3.9 Lattice of subgroups of a group

**theorem** (in *group*) *subgroups-partial-order*:  
 $\text{partial-order } (\llbracket \text{carrier} = \{H. \text{subgroup } H \text{ } G\}, \text{le} = \text{op} \subseteq \rrbracket)$   
**by** (*rule partial-order.intro*) *simp-all*

**lemma** (in *group*) *subgroup-self*:  
 $\text{subgroup } (\text{carrier } G) \text{ } G$   
**by** (*rule subgroupI*) *auto*

**lemma** (in *group*) *subgroup-imp-group*:  
 $\text{subgroup } H \text{ } G \implies \text{group } (G(\llbracket \text{carrier} := H \rrbracket))$   
**using** *subgroup.subgroup-is-group [OF - group.intro]* .

**lemma** (in *group*) *is-monoid* [*intro, simp*]:  
 $\text{monoid } G$

```

by (auto intro: monoid.intro m-assoc)

lemma (in group) subgroup-inv-equality:
  [| subgroup H G; x ∈ H |] ==> m-inv (G (| carrier := H |)) x = inv x
apply (rule-tac inv-equality [THEN sym])
  apply (rule group.l-inv [OF subgroup-imp-group, simplified], assumption+)
  apply (rule subsetD [OF subgroup.subset], assumption+)
apply (rule subsetD [OF subgroup.subset], assumption)
apply (rule-tac group.inv-closed [OF subgroup-imp-group, simplified], assumption+)
done

theorem (in group) subgroups-Inter:
  assumes subgr: (!!H. H ∈ A ==> subgroup H G)
  and not-empty: A ~= {}
  shows subgroup (⋂ A) G
proof (rule subgroupI)
  from subgr [THEN subgroup.subset] and not-empty
  show ⋂ A ⊆ carrier G by blast
next
  from subgr [THEN subgroup.one-closed]
  show ⋂ A ~= {} by blast
next
  fix x assume x ∈ ⋂ A
  with subgr [THEN subgroup.m-inv-closed]
  show inv x ∈ ⋂ A by blast
next
  fix x y assume x ∈ ⋂ A y ∈ ⋂ A
  with subgr [THEN subgroup.m-closed]
  show x ⊗ y ∈ ⋂ A by blast
qed

theorem (in group) subgroups-complete-lattice:
  complete-lattice (| carrier = {H. subgroup H G}, le = op ⊆ |)
  (is complete-lattice ?L)
proof (rule partial-order.complete-lattice-criterion1)
  show partial-order ?L by (rule subgroups-partial-order)
next
  have greatest ?L (carrier G) (carrier ?L)
  by (unfold greatest-def) (simp add: subgroup.subset subgroup-self)
  then show ∃ G. greatest ?L G (carrier ?L) ..
next
  fix A
  assume L: A ⊆ carrier ?L and non-empty: A ~= {}
  then have Int-subgroup: subgroup (⋂ A) G
  by (fastsimp intro: subgroups-Inter)
  have greatest ?L (⋂ A) (Lower ?L A)
  (is greatest ?L ?Int -)
proof (rule greatest-LowerI)
  fix H

```

```

assume  $H: H \in A$ 
with  $L$  have  $\text{subgroup}H: \text{subgroup } H \ G$  by auto
from  $\text{subgroup}H$  have  $\text{group}H: \text{group } (G \ (| \text{carrier} := H \ |))$  (is group ?H)
  by (rule subgroup-imp-group)
from  $\text{group}H$  have  $\text{monoid}H: \text{monoid } ?H$ 
  by (rule group.is-monoid)
from  $H$  have  $\text{Int-subset}: ?\text{Int} \subseteq H$  by fastsimp
then show  $\text{le } ?L \ ?\text{Int } H$  by simp
next
  fix  $H$ 
  assume  $H: H \in \text{Lower } ?L \ A$ 
  with  $L$   $\text{Int-subgroup}$  show  $\text{le } ?L \ H \ ?\text{Int}$  by (fastsimp intro: Inter-greatest)
next
  show  $A \subseteq \text{carrier } ?L$  by (rule L)
next
  show  $?\text{Int} \in \text{carrier } ?L$  by simp (rule Int-subgroup)
qed
then show  $\exists I. \text{greatest } ?L \ I \ (\text{Lower } ?L \ A) \ ..$ 
qed
end

```

## 4 FiniteProduct: Product Operator for Commutative Monoids

**theory** *FiniteProduct* **imports** *Group* **begin**

Instantiation of locale *LC* of theory *Finite-Set* is not possible, because here we have explicit typing rules like  $x \in \text{carrier } G$ . We introduce an explicit argument for the domain  $D$ .

**consts**

$\text{foldSetD} :: ['a \text{ set}, 'b \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'a, 'a] \Rightarrow ('b \text{ set} * 'a) \text{ set}$

**inductive**  $\text{foldSetD } D \ f \ e$

**intros**

$\text{emptyI} \ [\text{intro}]: e \in D \Rightarrow (\{\}, e) \in \text{foldSetD } D \ f \ e$

$\text{insertI} \ [\text{intro}]: [\![ \ x \sim: A; f \ x \ y \in D; (A, y) \in \text{foldSetD } D \ f \ e \ ]\!] \Rightarrow$   
 $(\text{insert } x \ A, f \ x \ y) \in \text{foldSetD } D \ f \ e$

**inductive-cases**  $\text{empty-foldSetDE} \ [\text{elim!}]: (\{\}, x) \in \text{foldSetD } D \ f \ e$

**constdefs**

$\text{foldD} :: ['a \text{ set}, 'b \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'a, 'a, 'b \text{ set}] \Rightarrow 'a$

$\text{foldD } D \ f \ e \ A == \text{THE } x. (A, x) \in \text{foldSetD } D \ f \ e$

**lemma**  $\text{foldSetD-closed}$ :

$[\![ (A, z) \in \text{foldSetD } D \ f \ e ; e \in D; !!x \ y. [\![ \ x \in A; y \in D \ ]\!] \Rightarrow f \ x \ y \in D \ ]\!]$

```

    || ==> z ∈ D
  by (erule foldSetD.elims) auto

```

**lemma** *Diff1-foldSetD*:

```

  [| (A - {x}, y) ∈ foldSetD D f e; x ∈ A; f x y ∈ D |] ==>
    (A, f x y) ∈ foldSetD D f e
  apply (erule insert-Diff [THEN subst], rule foldSetD.intros)
  apply auto
done

```

**lemma** *foldSetD-imp-finite* [simp]:  $(A, x) \in \text{foldSetD } D f e \implies \text{finite } A$   
 by (induct set: foldSetD) auto

**lemma** *finite-imp-foldSetD*:

```

  [| finite A; e ∈ D; !!x y. [| x ∈ A; y ∈ D |] ==> f x y ∈ D |] ==>
    EX x. (A, x) ∈ foldSetD D f e
  proof (induct set: Finites)
    case empty then show ?case by auto
  next
    case (insert x F)
    then obtain y where y: (F, y) ∈ foldSetD D f e by auto
    with insert have y ∈ D by (auto dest: foldSetD-closed)
    with y and insert have (insert x F, f x y) ∈ foldSetD D f e
    by (intro foldSetD.intros) auto
    then show ?case ..
  qed

```

#### 4.1 Left-commutative operations

**locale** *LCD* =

```

  fixes B :: 'b set
  and D :: 'a set
  and f :: 'b => 'a => 'a (infixl · 70)
  assumes left-commute:
    [| x ∈ B; y ∈ B; z ∈ D |] ==> x · (y · z) = y · (x · z)
  and f-closed [simp, intro!]: !!x y. [| x ∈ B; y ∈ D |] ==> f x y ∈ D

```

**lemma** (in *LCD*) *foldSetD-closed* [dest]:

```

  (A, z) ∈ foldSetD D f e ==> z ∈ D
  by (erule foldSetD.elims) auto

```

**lemma** (in *LCD*) *Diff1-foldSetD*:

```

  [| (A - {x}, y) ∈ foldSetD D f e; x ∈ A; A ⊆ B |] ==>
    (A, f x y) ∈ foldSetD D f e
  apply (subgoal-tac x ∈ B)
  prefer 2 apply fast
  apply (erule insert-Diff [THEN subst], rule foldSetD.intros)
  apply auto
done

```

**lemma** (in LCD) *foldSetD-imp-finite* [simp]:

$(A, x) \in \text{foldSetD } D \text{ f } e \implies \text{finite } A$

**by** (induct set: *foldSetD*) *auto*

**lemma** (in LCD) *finite-imp-foldSetD*:

$[| \text{finite } A; A \subseteq B; e \in D |] \implies \exists x. (A, x) \in \text{foldSetD } D \text{ f } e$

**proof** (induct set: *Finites*)

**case** *empty* **then show** ?*case* **by** *auto*

**next**

**case** (*insert*  $x \ F$ )

**then obtain**  $y$  **where**  $y: (F, y) \in \text{foldSetD } D \text{ f } e$  **by** *auto*

**with** *insert* **have**  $y \in D$  **by** *auto*

**with**  $y$  **and** *insert* **have** (*insert*  $x \ F, f \ x \ y$ )  $\in \text{foldSetD } D \text{ f } e$

**by** (*intro foldSetD.intros*) *auto*

**then show** ?*case* **..**

**qed**

**lemma** (in LCD) *foldSetD-determ-aux*:

$e \in D \implies \forall A \ x. A \subseteq B \ \& \ \text{card } A < n \implies (A, x) \in \text{foldSetD } D \text{ f } e \implies$

$(\forall y. (A, y) \in \text{foldSetD } D \text{ f } e \implies y = x)$

**apply** (*induct*  $n$ )

**apply** (*auto simp add: less-Suc-eq*)

**apply** (*erule foldSetD.cases*)

**apply** *blast*

**apply** (*erule foldSetD.cases*)

**apply** *blast*

**apply** *clarify*

force simplification of  $\text{card } A < \text{card } (\text{insert } \dots)$ .

**apply** (*erule rev-mp*)

**apply** (*simp add: less-Suc-eq-le*)

**apply** (*rule impI*)

**apply** (*rename-tac*  $Aa \ x \ a \ ya \ Ab \ x \ b \ yb$ , *case-tac*  $xa = xb$ )

**apply** (*subgoal-tac*  $Aa = Ab$ )

**prefer** 2 **apply** (*blast elim!: equalityE*)

**apply** *blast*

case  $xa \notin xb$ .

**apply** (*subgoal-tac*  $Aa - \{xb\} = Ab - \{xa\} \ \& \ xb \in Aa \ \& \ xa \in Ab$ )

**prefer** 2 **apply** (*blast elim!: equalityE*)

**apply** *clarify*

**apply** (*subgoal-tac*  $Aa = \text{insert } xb \ Ab - \{xa\}$ )

**prefer** 2 **apply** *blast*

**apply** (*subgoal-tac*  $\text{card } Aa \leq \text{card } Ab$ )

**prefer** 2

**apply** (*rule Suc-le-mono* [*THEN* *subst*])

**apply** (*simp add: card-Suc-Diff1*)

**apply** (*rule-tac*  $A1 = Aa - \{xb\}$  **in** *finite-imp-foldSetD* [*THEN* *exE*])

```

    apply (blast intro: foldSetD-imp-finite finite-Diff)
  apply best
  apply assumption
  apply (frule (1) Diff1-foldSetD)
  apply best
  apply (subgoal-tac ya = f xb x)
  prefer 2
  apply (subgoal-tac Aa  $\subseteq$  B)
  prefer 2 apply best
  apply (blast del: equalityCE)
  apply (subgoal-tac (Ab - {xa}, x)  $\in$  foldSetD D f e)
  prefer 2 apply simp
  apply (subgoal-tac yb = f xa x)
  prefer 2
  apply (blast del: equalityCE dest: Diff1-foldSetD)
  apply (simp (no-asm-simp))
  apply (rule left-commute)
    apply assumption
  apply best
  apply best
done

```

**lemma** (in LCD) *foldSetD-determ*:

```

[[ (A, x)  $\in$  foldSetD D f e; (A, y)  $\in$  foldSetD D f e; e  $\in$  D; A  $\subseteq$  B ]]
==> y = x
by (blast intro: foldSetD-determ-aux [rule-format])

```

**lemma** (in LCD) *foldD-equality*:

```

[[ (A, y)  $\in$  foldSetD D f e; e  $\in$  D; A  $\subseteq$  B ]] ==> foldD D f e A = y
by (unfold foldD-def) (blast intro: foldSetD-determ)

```

**lemma** *foldD-empty* [simp]:

```

e  $\in$  D ==> foldD D f e {} = e
by (unfold foldD-def) blast

```

**lemma** (in LCD) *foldD-insert-aux*:

```

[[ x  $\sim$ : A; x  $\in$  B; e  $\in$  D; A  $\subseteq$  B ]] ==>
  ((insert x A, v)  $\in$  foldSetD D f e) =
  (EX y. (A, y)  $\in$  foldSetD D f e & v = f x y)
  apply auto
  apply (rule-tac A1 = A in finite-imp-foldSetD [THEN exE])
    apply (fastsimp dest: foldSetD-imp-finite)
    apply assumption
  apply assumption
  apply (blast intro: foldSetD-determ)
done

```

**lemma** (in LCD) *foldD-insert*:

```

[[ finite A; x  $\sim$ : A; x  $\in$  B; e  $\in$  D; A  $\subseteq$  B ]] ==>

```

```

    foldD D f e (insert x A) = f x (foldD D f e A)
  apply (unfold foldD-def)
  apply (simp add: foldD-insert-aux)
  apply (rule the-equality)
  apply (auto intro: finite-imp-foldSetD
    cong add: conj-cong simp add: foldD-def [symmetric] foldD-equality)
  done

```

```

lemma (in LCD) foldD-closed [simp]:
  [| finite A; e ∈ D; A ⊆ B |] ==> foldD D f e A ∈ D
proof (induct set: Finites)
  case empty then show ?case by (simp add: foldD-empty)
next
  case insert then show ?case by (simp add: foldD-insert)
qed

```

```

lemma (in LCD) foldD-commute:
  [| finite A; x ∈ B; e ∈ D; A ⊆ B |] ==>
  f x (foldD D f e A) = foldD D f (f x e) A
  apply (induct set: Finites)
  apply simp
  apply (auto simp add: left-commute foldD-insert)
  done

```

```

lemma Int-mono2:
  [| A ⊆ C; B ⊆ C |] ==> A Int B ⊆ C
  by blast

```

```

lemma (in LCD) foldD-nest-Un-Int:
  [| finite A; finite C; e ∈ D; A ⊆ B; C ⊆ B |] ==>
  foldD D f (foldD D f e C) A = foldD D f (foldD D f e (A Int C)) (A Un C)
  apply (induct set: Finites)
  apply simp
  apply (simp add: foldD-insert foldD-commute Int-insert-left insert-absorb
    Int-mono2 Un-subset-iff)
  done

```

```

lemma (in LCD) foldD-nest-Un-disjoint:
  [| finite A; finite B; A Int B = {}; e ∈ D; A ⊆ B; C ⊆ B |]
  ==> foldD D f e (A Un B) = foldD D f (foldD D f e B) A
  by (simp add: foldD-nest-Un-Int)

```

— Delete rules to do with *foldSetD* relation.

```

declare foldSetD-imp-finite [simp del]
  empty-foldSetDE [rule del]
  foldSetD.intros [rule del]
declare (in LCD)
  foldSetD-closed [rule del]

```

## 4.2 Commutative monoids

We enter a more restrictive context, with  $f :: 'a ==> 'a ==> 'a$  instead of  $'b ==> 'a ==> 'a$ .

```

locale ACeD =
  fixes D :: 'a set
  and f :: 'a ==> 'a ==> 'a    (infixl · 70)
  and e :: 'a
  assumes ident [simp]: x ∈ D ==> x · e = x
  and commute: [| x ∈ D; y ∈ D |] ==> x · y = y · x
  and assoc: [| x ∈ D; y ∈ D; z ∈ D |] ==> (x · y) · z = x · (y · z)
  and e-closed [simp]: e ∈ D
  and f-closed [simp]: [| x ∈ D; y ∈ D |] ==> x · y ∈ D

```

```

lemma (in ACeD) left-commute:
  [| x ∈ D; y ∈ D; z ∈ D |] ==> x · (y · z) = y · (x · z)

```

```

proof –
  assume D: x ∈ D y ∈ D z ∈ D
  then have x · (y · z) = (y · z) · x by (simp add: commute)
  also from D have ... = y · (z · x) by (simp add: assoc)
  also from D have z · x = x · z by (simp add: commute)
  finally show ?thesis .
qed

```

```

lemmas (in ACeD) AC = assoc commute left-commute

```

```

lemma (in ACeD) left-ident [simp]: x ∈ D ==> e · x = x

```

```

proof –
  assume D: x ∈ D
  have x · e = x by (rule ident)
  with D show ?thesis by (simp add: commute)
qed

```

```

lemma (in ACeD) foldD-Un-Int:

```

```

  [| finite A; finite B; A ⊆ D; B ⊆ D |] ==>
    foldD D f e A · foldD D f e B =
    foldD D f e (A Un B) · foldD D f e (A Int B)
  apply (induct set: Finites)
  apply (simp add: left-commute LCD.foldD-closed [OF LCD.intro [of D]])
  apply (simp add: AC insert-absorb Int-insert-left
    LCD.foldD-insert [OF LCD.intro [of D]]
    LCD.foldD-closed [OF LCD.intro [of D]]
    Int-mono2 Un-subset-iff)
  done

```

```

lemma (in ACeD) foldD-Un-disjoint:

```

```

  [| finite A; finite B; A Int B = {}; A ⊆ D; B ⊆ D |] ==>
    foldD D f e (A Un B) = foldD D f e A · foldD D f e B
  by (simp add: foldD-Un-Int)

```



*left-commute LCD.foldD-closed [OF LCD.intro [of D]] Un-subset-iff)*

### 4.3 Products over Finite Sets

**constdefs** (structure *G*)

```
finprod :: [('b, 'm) monoid-scheme, 'a => 'b, 'a set] => 'b
finprod G f A == if finite A
  then foldD (carrier G) (mult G o f) 1 A
  else arbitrary
```

**syntax**

```
-finprod :: index => idt => 'a set => 'b => 'b
  ((3⊗ --:-. -) [1000, 0, 51, 10] 10)
```

**syntax** (*xsymbols*)

```
-finprod :: index => idt => 'a set => 'b => 'b
  ((3⊗ --∈-. -) [1000, 0, 51, 10] 10)
```

**syntax** (*HTML output*)

```
-finprod :: index => idt => 'a set => 'b => 'b
  ((3⊗ --∈-. -) [1000, 0, 51, 10] 10)
```

**translations**

```
⊗1i:A. b == finprod ∘1 (%i. b) A
— Beware of argument permutation!
```

**lemma** (in *comm-monoid*) *finprod-empty* [*simp*]:

```
finprod G f {} = 1
by (simp add: finprod-def)
```

**declare** *funcsetI* [*intro*]

*funcset-mem* [*dest*]

**lemma** (in *comm-monoid*) *finprod-insert* [*simp*]:

```
[| finite F; a ∉ F; f ∈ F -> carrier G; f a ∈ carrier G |] ==>
  finprod G f (insert a F) = f a ⊗ finprod G f F
```

**apply** (*rule trans*)

**apply** (*simp add: finprod-def*)

**apply** (*rule trans*)

**apply** (*rule LCD.foldD-insert [OF LCD.intro [of insert a F]]*)

**apply** *simp*

**apply** (*rule m-lcomm*)

**apply** *fast*

**apply** *fast*

**apply** *assumption*

**apply** (*fastsimp intro: m-closed*)

**apply** *simp+*

**apply** *fast*

**apply** (*auto simp add: finprod-def*)

**done**

**lemma** (in *comm-monoid*) *finprod-one* [*simp*]:

```

  finite A ==> ( $\bigotimes i:A. 1$ ) = 1
proof (induct set: Finites)
  case empty show ?case by simp
next
  case (insert a A)
  have (%i. 1)  $\in A \rightarrow$  carrier G by auto
  with insert show ?case by simp
qed

```

```

lemma (in comm-monoid) finprod-closed [simp]:
  fixes A
  assumes fin: finite A and f:  $f \in A \rightarrow$  carrier G
  shows finprod G f A  $\in$  carrier G
using fin f
proof induct
  case empty show ?case by simp
next
  case (insert a A)
  then have a:  $f a \in$  carrier G by fast
  from insert have A:  $f \in A \rightarrow$  carrier G by fast
  from insert A a show ?case by simp
qed

```

```

lemma funcset-Int-left [simp, intro]:
  [|  $f \in A \rightarrow C$ ;  $f \in B \rightarrow C$  |] ==>  $f \in A \text{ Int } B \rightarrow C$ 
  by fast

```

```

lemma funcset-Un-left [iff]:
  ( $f \in A \text{ Un } B \rightarrow C$ ) = ( $f \in A \rightarrow C \ \& \ f \in B \rightarrow C$ )
  by fast

```

```

lemma (in comm-monoid) finprod-Un-Int:
  [| finite A; finite B;  $g \in A \rightarrow$  carrier G;  $g \in B \rightarrow$  carrier G |] ==>
  finprod G g (A Un B)  $\otimes$  finprod G g (A Int B) =
  finprod G g A  $\otimes$  finprod G g B

```

— The reversed orientation looks more natural, but LOOPS as a simprule!

```

proof (induct set: Finites)
  case empty then show ?case by (simp add: finprod-closed)
next
  case (insert a A)
  then have a:  $g a \in$  carrier G by fast
  from insert have A:  $g \in A \rightarrow$  carrier G by fast
  from insert A a show ?case
  by (simp add: m-ac Int-insert-left insert-absorb finprod-closed
    Int-mono2 Un-subset-iff)
qed

```

```

lemma (in comm-monoid) finprod-Un-disjoint:
  [| finite A; finite B; A Int B = {} |]

```

```

    g ∈ A -> carrier G; g ∈ B -> carrier G ||
  ==> finprod G g (A Un B) = finprod G g A ⊗ finprod G g B
apply (subst finprod-Un-Int [symmetric])
  apply (auto simp add: finprod-closed)
done

```

```

lemma (in comm-monoid) finprod-multf:
  [| finite A; f ∈ A -> carrier G; g ∈ A -> carrier G |] ==>
  finprod G (%x. f x ⊗ g x) A = (finprod G f A ⊗ finprod G g A)
proof (induct set: Finites)
  case empty show ?case by simp
next
  case (insert a A) then
  have fA: f ∈ A -> carrier G by fast
  from insert have fa: f a ∈ carrier G by fast
  from insert have gA: g ∈ A -> carrier G by fast
  from insert have ga: g a ∈ carrier G by fast
  from insert have fgA: (%x. f x ⊗ g x) ∈ A -> carrier G
    by (simp add: Pi-def)
  show ?case
    by (simp add: insert fA fa gA ga fgA m-ac)
qed

```

```

lemma (in comm-monoid) finprod-cong':
  [| A = B; g ∈ B -> carrier G;
    !!i. i ∈ B ==> f i = g i |] ==> finprod G f A = finprod G g B
proof -
  assume prems: A = B g ∈ B -> carrier G
  !!i. i ∈ B ==> f i = g i
  show ?thesis
  proof (cases finite B)
  case True
  then have !!A. [| A = B; g ∈ B -> carrier G;
    !!i. i ∈ B ==> f i = g i |] ==> finprod G f A = finprod G g B
  proof induct
    case empty thus ?case by simp
  next
  case (insert x B)
  then have finprod G f A = finprod G f (insert x B) by simp
  also from insert have ... = f x ⊗ finprod G f B
  proof (intro finprod-insert)
    show finite B .
  next
  show x ~: B .
  next
  assume x ~: B !!i. i ∈ insert x B ==> f i = g i
  g ∈ insert x B -> carrier G
  thus f ∈ B -> carrier G by fastsimp
  next

```

```

    assume  $x \sim: B \text{ !!} i. i \in \text{insert } x B \implies f i = g i$ 
     $g \in \text{insert } x B \rightarrow \text{carrier } G$ 
    thus  $f x \in \text{carrier } G$  by fastsimp
  qed
  also from insert have  $\dots = g x \otimes \text{finprod } G g B$  by fastsimp
  also from insert have  $\dots = \text{finprod } G g (\text{insert } x B)$ 
  by (intro finprod-insert [THEN sym]) auto
  finally show ?case .
  qed
  with prems show ?thesis by simp
next
  case False with prems show ?thesis by (simp add: finprod-def)
  qed
qed

```

```

lemma (in comm-monoid) finprod-cong:
  [|  $A = B$ ;  $f \in B \rightarrow \text{carrier } G = \text{True}$ ;
     $\text{!!} i. i \in B \implies f i = g i$  |]  $\implies \text{finprod } G f A = \text{finprod } G g B$ 

  by (rule finprod-cong') force+

```

Usually, if this rule causes a failed congruence proof error, the reason is that the premise  $g \in B \rightarrow \text{carrier } G$  cannot be shown. Adding *Pi-def* to the simpset is often useful. For this reason, *comm-monoid.finprod-cong* is not added to the simpset by default.

```

declare funcsetI [rule del]
  funcset-mem [rule del]

```

```

lemma (in comm-monoid) finprod-0 [simp]:
   $f \in \{0::\text{nat}\} \rightarrow \text{carrier } G \implies \text{finprod } G f \{..0\} = f 0$ 
  by (simp add: Pi-def)

```

```

lemma (in comm-monoid) finprod-Suc [simp]:
   $f \in \{.. \text{Suc } n\} \rightarrow \text{carrier } G \implies$ 
   $\text{finprod } G f \{.. \text{Suc } n\} = (f (\text{Suc } n) \otimes \text{finprod } G f \{..n\})$ 
  by (simp add: Pi-def atMost-Suc)

```

```

lemma (in comm-monoid) finprod-Suc2:
   $f \in \{.. \text{Suc } n\} \rightarrow \text{carrier } G \implies$ 
   $\text{finprod } G f \{.. \text{Suc } n\} = (\text{finprod } G (\%i. f (\text{Suc } i)) \{..n\} \otimes f 0)$ 
  proof (induct n)
    case 0 thus ?case by (simp add: Pi-def)
  next
    case Suc thus ?case by (simp add: m-assoc Pi-def)
  qed

```

```

lemma (in comm-monoid) finprod-mult [simp]:
  [|  $f \in \{..n\} \rightarrow \text{carrier } G$ ;  $g \in \{..n\} \rightarrow \text{carrier } G$  |]  $\implies$ 
   $\text{finprod } G (\%i. f i \otimes g i) \{..n::\text{nat}\} =$ 

```

```

    finprod G f {..n} ⊗ finprod G g {..n}
  by (induct n) (simp-all add: m-ac Pi-def)

end

```

## 5 Exponent: The Combinatorial Argument Underlying the First Sylow Theorem

**theory** *Exponent* **imports** *Main Primes* **begin**

```

constdefs
  exponent      :: [nat, nat] => nat
  exponent p s == if prime p then (GREATEST r. p ^ r dvd s) else 0

```

### 5.1 Prime Theorems

**lemma** *prime-imp-one-less*: *prime p ==> Suc 0 < p*  
**by** (*unfold prime-def, force*)

**lemma** *prime-iff*:  
 (*prime p*) = (*Suc 0 < p* & ( $\forall a b. p \text{ dvd } a*b \longrightarrow (p \text{ dvd } a) \mid (p \text{ dvd } b)$ ))  
**apply** (*auto simp add: prime-imp-one-less*)  
**apply** (*blast dest!: prime-dvd-mult*)  
**apply** (*auto simp add: prime-def*)  
**apply** (*erule dvdE*)  
**apply** (*case-tac k=0, simp*)  
**apply** (*drule-tac x = m in spec*)  
**apply** (*drule-tac x = k in spec*)  
**apply** (*simp add: dvd-mult-cancel1 dvd-mult-cancel2*)  
**done**

**lemma** *zero-less-prime-power*: *prime p ==> 0 < p ^ a*  
**by** (*force simp add: prime-iff*)

**lemma** *zero-less-card-empty*: [*finite S; S ≠ {}*] ==> *0 < card(S)*  
**by** (*rule ccontr, simp*)

**lemma** *prime-dvd-cases*:  
 [*p\*k dvd m\*n; prime p*]  
 ==> ( $\exists x. k \text{ dvd } x*n \ \& \ m = p*x$ ) | ( $\exists y. k \text{ dvd } m*y \ \& \ n = p*y$ )  
**apply** (*simp add: prime-iff*)  
**apply** (*frule dvd-mult-left*)  
**apply** (*subgoal-tac p dvd m | p dvd n*)  
**prefer** 2 **apply** *blast*

```

apply (erule disjE)
apply (rule disjI1)
apply (rule-tac [2] disjI2)
apply (erule-tac  $n = m$  in dvdE)
apply (erule-tac [2]  $n = n$  in dvdE, auto)
apply (rule-tac [2]  $k = p$  in dvd-mult-cancel)
apply (rule-tac  $k = p$  in dvd-mult-cancel)
apply (simp-all add: mult-ac)
done

```

```

lemma prime-power-dvd-cases [rule-format (no-asm)]: prime  $p$ 
   $\implies \forall m\ n. p^c \text{ dvd } m * n \implies$ 
     $(\forall a\ b. a + b = \text{Suc } c \implies p^a \text{ dvd } m \mid p^b \text{ dvd } n)$ 
apply (induct-tac c)
apply clarify
apply (case-tac a)
apply simp
apply simp

```

```

apply simp
apply clarify
apply (erule prime-dvd-cases [THEN disjE], assumption, auto)

```

```

apply (case-tac a)
apply simp
apply clarify
apply (drule spec, drule spec, erule (1) notE impE)
apply (drule-tac  $x = \text{nat}$  in spec)
apply (drule-tac  $x = b$  in spec)
apply simp
apply (blast intro: dvd-refl mult-dvd-mono)

```

```

apply (case-tac b)
apply simp
apply clarify
apply (drule spec, drule spec, erule (1) notE impE)
apply (drule-tac  $x = a$  in spec)
apply (drule-tac  $x = \text{nat}$  in spec, simp)
apply (blast intro: dvd-refl mult-dvd-mono)
done

```

**lemma** div-combine:

$$[\text{prime } p; \sim (p \wedge (\text{Suc } r) \text{ dvd } n); p^{a+r} \text{ dvd } n * k] \\ \implies p^a \text{ dvd } k$$

**by** (drule-tac  $a = \text{Suc } r$  **and**  $b = a$  **in** prime-power-dvd-cases, assumption, auto)

```

lemma Suc-le-power: Suc 0 < p ==> Suc n <= p ^ n
apply (induct-tac n)
apply (simp (no-asm-simp))
apply simp
apply (subgoal-tac 2 * n + 2 <= p * p ^ n, simp)
apply (subgoal-tac 2 * p ^ n <= p * p ^ n)

apply (rule order-trans)
prefer 2 apply assumption
apply (drule-tac k = 2 in mult-le-mono2, simp)
apply (rule mult-le-mono1, simp)
done

```

```

lemma power-dvd-bound: [p ^ n dvd a; Suc 0 < p; 0 < a] ==> n < a
apply (drule dvd-imp-le)
apply (drule-tac [2] n = n in Suc-le-power, auto)
done

```

## 5.2 Exponent Theorems

```

lemma exponent-ge [rule-format]:
  [p ^ k dvd n; prime p; 0 < n] ==> k <= exponent p n
apply (simp add: exponent-def)
apply (erule Greatest-le)
apply (blast dest: prime-imp-one-less power-dvd-bound)
done

```

```

lemma power-exponent-dvd: 0 < s ==> (p ^ exponent p s) dvd s
apply (simp add: exponent-def)
apply clarify
apply (rule-tac k = 0 in GreatestI)
prefer 2 apply (blast dest: prime-imp-one-less power-dvd-bound, simp)
done

```

```

lemma power-Suc-exponent-Not-dvd:
  [(p * p ^ exponent p s) dvd s; prime p] ==> s = 0
apply (subgoal-tac p ^ Suc (exponent p s) dvd s)
prefer 2 apply simp
apply (rule ccontr)
apply (drule exponent-ge, auto)
done

```

```

lemma exponent-power-eq [simp]: prime p ==> exponent p (p ^ a) = a
apply (simp (no-asm-simp) add: exponent-def)
apply (rule Greatest-equality, simp)
apply (simp (no-asm-simp) add: prime-imp-one-less power-dvd-imp-le)
done

```

**lemma** *exponent-equalityI*:

!r::nat. (p ^ r dvd a) = (p ^ r dvd b) ==> exponent p a = exponent p b  
**by** (simp (no-asm-simp) add: exponent-def)

**lemma** *exponent-eq-0* [simp]:  $\neg$  prime p ==> exponent p s = 0

**by** (simp (no-asm-simp) add: exponent-def)

**lemma** *exponent-mult-add1*:

[| 0 < a; 0 < b |]  
 ==> (exponent p a) + (exponent p b) <= exponent p (a \* b)  
**apply** (case-tac prime p)  
**apply** (rule exponent-ge)  
**apply** (auto simp add: power-add)  
**apply** (blast intro: prime-imp-one-less power-exponent-dvd mult-dvd-mono)  
**done**

**lemma** *exponent-mult-add2*: [| 0 < a; 0 < b |]

==> exponent p (a \* b) <= (exponent p a) + (exponent p b)  
**apply** (case-tac prime p)  
**apply** (rule leI, clarify)  
**apply** (cut-tac p = p and s = a\*b in power-exponent-dvd, auto)  
**apply** (subgoal-tac p ^ (Suc (exponent p a + exponent p b)) dvd a \* b)  
**apply** (rule-tac [2] le-imp-power-dvd [THEN dvd-trans])  
**prefer** 3 **apply** assumption  
**prefer** 2 **apply** simp  
**apply** (frule-tac a = Suc (exponent p a) and b = Suc (exponent p b) in  
 prime-power-dvd-cases)  
**apply** (assumption, force, simp)  
**apply** (blast dest: power-Suc-exponent-Not-dvd)  
**done**

**lemma** *exponent-mult-add*:

[| 0 < a; 0 < b |]  
 ==> exponent p (a \* b) = (exponent p a) + (exponent p b)  
**by** (blast intro: exponent-mult-add1 exponent-mult-add2 order-antisym)

**lemma** *not-divides-exponent-0*:  $\sim$  (p dvd n) ==> exponent p n = 0

**apply** (case-tac exponent p n, simp)  
**apply** (case-tac n, simp)  
**apply** (cut-tac s = n and p = p in power-exponent-dvd)  
**apply** (auto dest: dvd-mult-left)  
**done**

**lemma** *exponent-1-eq-0* [simp]: exponent p (Suc 0) = 0

**apply** (case-tac prime p)



```

apply (auto simp add: prime-iff not-divides-exponent-0)
done

```

### 5.3 Lemmas for the Main Combinatorial Argument

```

lemma le-extend-mult: [| 0 < c; a <= b |] ==> a <= b * (c::nat)
apply (rule-tac P = %x. x <= b * c in subst)
apply (rule mult-1-right)
apply (rule mult-le-mono, auto)
done

```

```

lemma p-fac-forw-lemma:
  [| 0 < (m::nat); 0 < k; k < p^a; (p^r) dvd (p^a)*m - k |] ==> r <= a
apply (rule notnotD)
apply (rule notI)
apply (drule contrapos-nn [OF - leI, THEN notnotD], assumption)
apply (drule-tac m = a in less-imp-le)
apply (drule le-imp-power-dvd)
apply (drule-tac n = p ^ r in dvd-trans, assumption)
apply (frule-tac m = k in less-imp-le)
apply (drule-tac c = m in le-extend-mult, assumption)
apply (drule-tac k = p ^ a and m = (p ^ a) * m in dvd-diffD1)
prefer 2 apply assumption
apply (rule dvd-refl [THEN dvd-mult2])
apply (drule-tac n = k in dvd-imp-le, auto)
done

```

```

lemma p-fac-forw: [| 0 < (m::nat); 0 < k; k < p^a; (p^r) dvd (p^a)*m - k |]
  ==> (p^r) dvd (p^a) - k
apply (frule-tac k1 = k and i = p in p-fac-forw-lemma [THEN le-imp-power-dvd],
  auto)
apply (subgoal-tac p^r dvd p^a*m)
prefer 2 apply (blast intro: dvd-mult2)
apply (drule dvd-diffD1)
apply assumption
prefer 2 apply (blast intro: dvd-diff)
apply (drule less-imp-Suc-add, auto)
done

```

```

lemma r-le-a-forw: [| 0 < (k::nat); k < p^a; 0 < p; (p^r) dvd (p^a) - k |] ==>
  r <= a
by (rule-tac m = Suc 0 in p-fac-forw-lemma, auto)

```

```

lemma p-fac-backw: [| 0 < m; 0 < k; 0 < (p::nat); k < p^a; (p^r) dvd p^a - k |]
  ==> (p^r) dvd (p^a)*m - k
apply (frule-tac k1 = k and i = p in r-le-a-forw [THEN le-imp-power-dvd], auto)
apply (subgoal-tac p^r dvd p^a*m)

```

```

prefer 2 apply (blast intro: dvd-mult2)
apply (drule dvd-diffD1)
apply assumption
prefer 2 apply (blast intro: dvd-diff)
apply (drule less-imp-Suc-add, auto)
done

```

```

lemma exponent-p-a-m-k-equation: [| 0 < m; 0 < k; 0 < (p::nat); k < p^a |]
  ==> exponent p (p^a * m - k) = exponent p (p^a - k)
apply (blast intro: exponent-equalityI p-fac-forw p-fac-backw)
done

```

Suc rules that we have to delete from the simpset

```

lemmas bad-Sucs = binomial-Suc-Suc mult-Suc mult-Suc-right

```

```

lemma p-not-div-choose-lemma [rule-format]:
  [|  $\forall i. \text{Suc } i < K \longrightarrow \text{exponent } p (\text{Suc } i) = \text{exponent } p (\text{Suc}(j+i))$  |]
  ==>  $k < K \longrightarrow \text{exponent } p ((j+k) \text{ choose } k) = 0$ 
apply (case-tac prime p)
prefer 2 apply simp
apply (induct-tac k)
apply (simp (no-asm))

```

```

apply (subgoal-tac 0 < (Suc (j+n) choose Suc n) )
prefer 2 apply (simp add: zero-less-binomial-iff, clarify)
apply (subgoal-tac exponent p ((Suc (j+n) choose Suc n) * Suc n) =
  exponent p (Suc n))

```

First, use the assumed equation. We simplify the LHS to  $\text{exponent } p (\text{Suc } (j + n) \text{ choose } \text{Suc } n) + \text{exponent } p (\text{Suc } n)$  the common terms cancel, proving the conclusion.

```

apply (simp del: bad-Sucs add: exponent-mult-add)

```

Establishing the equation requires first applying *Suc-times-binomial-eq ...*

```

apply (simp del: bad-Sucs add: Suc-times-binomial-eq [symmetric])

```

...then *exponent-mult-add* and the quantified premise.

```

apply (simp del: bad-Sucs add: zero-less-binomial-iff exponent-mult-add)
done

```

```

lemma p-not-div-choose:

```

```

  [| k < K; k <= n;
     $\forall j. 0 < j \ \& \ j < K \longrightarrow \text{exponent } p (n - k + (K - j)) = \text{exponent } p (K - j)$  |]
  ==> exponent p (n choose k) = 0
apply (cut-tac j = n-k and k = k and p = p in p-not-div-choose-lemma)
prefer 3 apply simp

```

```

prefer 2 apply assumption
apply (drule-tac  $x = K - \text{Suc } i$  in spec)
apply (simp add: Suc-diff-le)
done

```

```

lemma const-p-fac-right:
   $0 < m \implies \text{exponent } p ((p^a * m - \text{Suc } 0) \text{ choose } (p^a - \text{Suc } 0)) = 0$ 
apply (case-tac prime p)
prefer 2 apply simp
apply (frule-tac  $a = a$  in zero-less-prime-power)
apply (rule-tac  $K = p^a$  in p-not-div-choose)
  apply simp
  apply simp
apply (case-tac m)
apply (case-tac [2]  $p^a$ )
apply auto

```

```

apply (subgoal-tac  $0 < p$ )
prefer 2 apply (force dest!: prime-imp-one-less)
apply (subst exponent-p-a-m-k-equation, auto)
done

```

```

lemma const-p-fac:
   $0 < m \implies \text{exponent } p (((p^a) * m) \text{ choose } p^a) = \text{exponent } p m$ 
apply (case-tac prime p)
prefer 2 apply simp
apply (subgoal-tac  $0 < p^a * m \ \& \ p^a \leq p^a * m$ )
prefer 2 apply (force simp add: prime-iff)

```

A similar trick to the one used in *p-not-div-choose-lemma*: insert an equation; use *exponent-mult-add* on the LHS; on the RHS, first transform the binomial coefficient, then use *exponent-mult-add*.

```

apply (subgoal-tac  $\text{exponent } p (((p^a) * m) \text{ choose } p^a) * p^a =$ 
   $a + \text{exponent } p m$ )
apply (simp del: bad-Sucs add: zero-less-binomial-iff exponent-mult-add prime-iff)

```

one subgoal left!

```

apply (subst times-binomial-minus1-eq, simp, simp)
apply (subst exponent-mult-add, simp)
apply (simp (no-asm-simp) add: zero-less-binomial-iff)
apply arith
apply (simp del: bad-Sucs add: exponent-mult-add const-p-fac-right)
done

```

**end**

## 6 Coset: Cosets and Quotient Groups

**theory** *Coset* **imports** *Group Exponent* **begin**

**constdefs** (**structure** *G*)

*r-coset* ::  $[-, 'a \text{ set}, 'a] \Rightarrow 'a \text{ set}$  (**infixl**  $\#>_1$  60)  
 $H \#> a \equiv \bigcup_{h \in H}. \{h \otimes a\}$

*l-coset* ::  $[-, 'a, 'a \text{ set}] \Rightarrow 'a \text{ set}$  (**infixl**  $<\#_1$  60)  
 $a <\# H \equiv \bigcup_{h \in H}. \{a \otimes h\}$

*RCOSETS* ::  $[-, 'a \text{ set}] \Rightarrow ('a \text{ set}) \text{ set}$  (*rcosets1* - [81] 80)  
 $\text{rcosets } H \equiv \bigcup_{a \in \text{carrier } G}. \{H \#> a\}$

*set-mult* ::  $[-, 'a \text{ set}, 'a \text{ set}] \Rightarrow 'a \text{ set}$  (**infixl**  $<\#>_1$  60)  
 $H <\#> K \equiv \bigcup_{h \in H}. \bigcup_{k \in K}. \{h \otimes k\}$

*SET-INV* ::  $[-, 'a \text{ set}] \Rightarrow 'a \text{ set}$  (*set'-inv1* - [81] 80)  
 $\text{set-inv } H \equiv \bigcup_{h \in H}. \{\text{inv } h\}$

**locale** *normal* = *subgroup* + *group* +

**assumes** *coset-eq*:  $(\forall x \in \text{carrier } G. H \#> x = x <\# H)$

**syntax**

$\text{@normal} :: ['a \text{ set}, ('a, 'b) \text{ monoid-scheme}] \Rightarrow \text{bool}$  (**infixl**  $\triangleleft$  60)

**translations**

$H \triangleleft G == \text{normal } H \ G$

### 6.1 Basic Properties of Cosets

**lemma** (**in** *group*) *coset-mult-assoc*:

$[[ M \subseteq \text{carrier } G; g \in \text{carrier } G; h \in \text{carrier } G ]]$   
 $==> (M \#> g) \#> h = M \#> (g \otimes h)$

**by** (*force simp add: r-coset-def m-assoc*)

**lemma** (**in** *group*) *coset-mult-one* [*simp*]:  $M \subseteq \text{carrier } G ==> M \#> \mathbf{1} = M$

**by** (*force simp add: r-coset-def*)

**lemma** (**in** *group*) *coset-mult-inv1*:

$[[ M \#> (x \otimes (\text{inv } y)) = M; x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G;$   
 $M \subseteq \text{carrier } G ]]$   $==> M \#> x = M \#> y$

**apply** (*erule subst [of concl: %z. M \#> x = z \#> y]*)

**apply** (*simp add: coset-mult-assoc m-assoc*)

**done**

**lemma** (**in** *group*) *coset-mult-inv2*:

$[[ M \#> x = M \#> y; x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G; M \subseteq \text{carrier } G ]]$

```

==> M #> (x ⊗ (inv y)) = M
apply (simp add: coset-mult-assoc [symmetric])
apply (simp add: coset-mult-assoc)
done

```

```

lemma (in group) coset-join1:
  [| H #> x = H; x ∈ carrier G; subgroup H G |] ==> x ∈ H
apply (erule subst)
apply (simp add: r-coset-def)
apply (blast intro: l-one subgroup.one-closed sym)
done

```

```

lemma (in group) solve-equation:
  [| subgroup H G; x ∈ H; y ∈ H |] ==> ∃ h ∈ H. y = h ⊗ x
apply (rule bexI [of - y ⊗ (inv x)])
apply (auto simp add: subgroup.m-closed subgroup.m-inv-closed m-assoc
  subgroup.subset [THEN subsetD])
done

```

```

lemma (in group) repr-independence:
  [| y ∈ H #> x; x ∈ carrier G; subgroup H G |] ==> H #> x = H #> y
by (auto simp add: r-coset-def m-assoc [symmetric]
  subgroup.subset [THEN subsetD]
  subgroup.m-closed solve-equation)

```

```

lemma (in group) coset-join2:
  [| x ∈ carrier G; subgroup H G; x ∈ H |] ==> H #> x = H
  — Alternative proof is to put x = 1 in repr-independence.
by (force simp add: subgroup.m-closed r-coset-def solve-equation)

```

```

lemma (in group) r-coset-subset-G:
  [| H ⊆ carrier G; x ∈ carrier G |] ==> H #> x ⊆ carrier G
by (auto simp add: r-coset-def)

```

```

lemma (in group) rcosI:
  [| h ∈ H; H ⊆ carrier G; x ∈ carrier G |] ==> h ⊗ x ∈ H #> x
by (auto simp add: r-coset-def)

```

```

lemma (in group) rcosetsI:
  [| H ⊆ carrier G; x ∈ carrier G |] ==> H #> x ∈ rcosets H
by (auto simp add: RCOSETS-def)

```

Really needed?

```

lemma (in group) transpose-inv:
  [| x ⊗ y = z; x ∈ carrier G; y ∈ carrier G; z ∈ carrier G |]
  ==> (inv x) ⊗ z = y
by (force simp add: m-assoc [symmetric])

```

```

lemma (in group) rcos-self: [| x ∈ carrier G; subgroup H G |] ==> x ∈ H #> x

```

```

apply (simp add: r-coset-def)
apply (blast intro: sym l-one subgroup.subset [THEN subsetD]
        subgroup.one-closed)
done

```

## 6.2 Normal subgroups

```

lemma normal-imp-subgroup:  $H \triangleleft G \implies \text{subgroup } H \ G$ 
by (simp add: normal-def subgroup-def)

```

```

lemma (in group) normalI:
  subgroup  $H \ G \implies (\forall x \in \text{carrier } G. H \#> x = x <\# H) \implies H \triangleleft G$ 
by (simp add: normal-def normal-axioms-def prems)

```

```

lemma (in normal) inv-op-closed1:
   $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; h \in H \rrbracket \implies (inv \ x) \otimes h \otimes x \in H$ 
apply (insert coset-eq)
apply (auto simp add: l-coset-def r-coset-def)
apply (drule bspec, assumption)
apply (drule equalityD1 [THEN subsetD], blast, clarify)
apply (simp add: m-assoc)
apply (simp add: m-assoc [symmetric])
done

```

```

lemma (in normal) inv-op-closed2:
   $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; h \in H \rrbracket \implies x \otimes h \otimes (inv \ x) \in H$ 
apply (subgoal-tac inv (inv x)  $\otimes h \otimes (inv \ x) \in H$ )
apply (simp add: )
apply (blast intro: inv-op-closed1)
done

```

Alternative characterization of normal subgroups

```

lemma (in group) normal-inv-iff:
   $(N \triangleleft G) =$ 
   $(\text{subgroup } N \ G \ \& \ (\forall x \in \text{carrier } G. \forall h \in N. x \otimes h \otimes (inv \ x) \in N))$ 
   $(\text{is } - = ?rhs)$ 
proof
  assume  $N: N \triangleleft G$ 
  show ?rhs
    by (blast intro: N normal.inv-op-closed2 normal-imp-subgroup)
next
  assume ?rhs
  hence sg: subgroup  $N \ G$ 
  and closed:  $\bigwedge x. x \in \text{carrier } G \implies \forall h \in N. x \otimes h \otimes inv \ x \in N$  by auto
  hence sb:  $N \subseteq \text{carrier } G$  by (simp add: subgroup.subset)
  show  $N \triangleleft G$ 
proof (intro normalI [OF sg], simp add: l-coset-def r-coset-def, clarify)
  fix  $x$ 
  assume  $x: x \in \text{carrier } G$ 

```

```

show  $(\bigcup_{h \in N}. \{h \otimes x\}) = (\bigcup_{h \in N}. \{x \otimes h\})$ 
proof
  show  $(\bigcup_{h \in N}. \{h \otimes x\}) \subseteq (\bigcup_{h \in N}. \{x \otimes h\})$ 
  proof clarify
    fix  $n$ 
    assume  $n: n \in N$ 
    show  $n \otimes x \in (\bigcup_{h \in N}. \{x \otimes h\})$ 
    proof
      from closed [of inv x]
      show  $\text{inv } x \otimes n \otimes x \in N$  by (simp add: x n)
      show  $n \otimes x \in \{x \otimes (\text{inv } x \otimes n \otimes x)\}$ 
      by (simp add: x n m-assoc [symmetric] sb [THEN subsetD])
    qed
  qed
next
  show  $(\bigcup_{h \in N}. \{x \otimes h\}) \subseteq (\bigcup_{h \in N}. \{h \otimes x\})$ 
  proof clarify
    fix  $n$ 
    assume  $n: n \in N$ 
    show  $x \otimes n \in (\bigcup_{h \in N}. \{h \otimes x\})$ 
    proof
      show  $x \otimes n \otimes \text{inv } x \in N$  by (simp add: x n closed)
      show  $x \otimes n \in \{x \otimes n \otimes \text{inv } x \otimes x\}$ 
      by (simp add: x n m-assoc sb [THEN subsetD])
    qed
  qed
qed
qed
qed

```

### 6.3 More Properties of Cosets

**lemma** (*in group*) *lcos-m-assoc*:

$\llbracket M \subseteq \text{carrier } G; g \in \text{carrier } G; h \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket$   
 $\implies g <\# (h <\# M) = (g \otimes h) <\# M$

**by** (*force simp add: l-coset-def m-assoc*)

**lemma** (*in group*) *lcos-mult-one*:  $M \subseteq \text{carrier } G \implies \mathbf{1} <\# M = M$

**by** (*force simp add: l-coset-def*)

**lemma** (*in group*) *l-coset-subset-G*:

$\llbracket H \subseteq \text{carrier } G; x \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies x <\# H \subseteq \text{carrier } G$

**by** (*auto simp add: l-coset-def subsetD*)

**lemma** (*in group*) *l-coset-swap*:

$\llbracket y \in x <\# H; x \in \text{carrier } G; \text{ subgroup } H \text{ } G \rrbracket \implies x \in y <\# H$

**proof** (*simp add: l-coset-def*)

**assume**  $\exists h \in H. y = x \otimes h$

**and**  $x: x \in \text{carrier } G$

```

    and sb: subgroup H G
  then obtain h' where h': h' ∈ H & x ⊗ h' = y by blast
  show ∃ h ∈ H. x = y ⊗ h
  proof
    show x = y ⊗ inv h' using h' x sb
    by (auto simp add: m-assoc subgroup.subset [THEN subsetD])
    show inv h' ∈ H using h' sb
    by (auto simp add: subgroup.subset [THEN subsetD] subgroup.m-inv-closed)
  qed
qed

```

```

lemma (in group) l-coset-carrier:
  [| y ∈ x <# H; x ∈ carrier G; subgroup H G |] ==> y ∈ carrier G
by (auto simp add: l-coset-def m-assoc
    subgroup.subset [THEN subsetD] subgroup.m-closed)

```

```

lemma (in group) l-repr-imp-subset:
  assumes y: y ∈ x <# H and x: x ∈ carrier G and sb: subgroup H G
  shows y <# H ⊆ x <# H
  proof -
    from y
    obtain h' where h' ∈ H x ⊗ h' = y by (auto simp add: l-coset-def)
    thus ?thesis using x sb
    by (auto simp add: l-coset-def m-assoc
        subgroup.subset [THEN subsetD] subgroup.m-closed)
  qed

```

```

lemma (in group) l-repr-independence:
  assumes y: y ∈ x <# H and x: x ∈ carrier G and sb: subgroup H G
  shows x <# H = y <# H
  proof
    show x <# H ⊆ y <# H
    by (rule l-repr-imp-subset,
        (blast intro: l-coset-swap l-coset-carrier y x sb)+)
    show y <# H ⊆ x <# H by (rule l-repr-imp-subset [OF y x sb])
  qed

```

```

lemma (in group) setmult-subset-G:
  [| H ⊆ carrier G; K ⊆ carrier G |] ==> H <#> K ⊆ carrier G
by (auto simp add: set-mult-def subsetD)

```

```

lemma (in group) subgroup-mult-id: subgroup H G ==> H <#> H = H
apply (auto simp add: subgroup.m-closed set-mult-def Sigma-def image-def)
apply (rule-tac x = x in bexI)
apply (rule bexI [of - 1])
apply (auto simp add: subgroup.m-closed subgroup.one-closed
    r-one subgroup.subset [THEN subsetD])
done

```



### 6.3.1 Set of inverses of an $r$ -coset.

**lemma** (in normal) *rcos-inv*:  
 assumes  $x: \quad x \in \text{carrier } G$   
 shows  $\text{set-inv } (H \#> x) = H \#> (\text{inv } x)$   
**proof** (simp add: *r-coset-def SET-INV-def* *x inv-mult-group*, safe)  
 fix  $h$   
 assume  $h \in H$   
 show  $\text{inv } x \otimes \text{inv } h \in (\bigcup_{j \in H}. \{j \otimes \text{inv } x\})$   
**proof**  
 show  $\text{inv } x \otimes \text{inv } h \otimes x \in H$   
 by (simp add: *inv-op-closed1* prems)  
 show  $\text{inv } x \otimes \text{inv } h \in \{\text{inv } x \otimes \text{inv } h \otimes x \otimes \text{inv } x\}$   
 by (simp add: prems *m-assoc*)  
 qed  
**next**  
 fix  $h$   
 assume  $h \in H$   
 show  $h \otimes \text{inv } x \in (\bigcup_{j \in H}. \{\text{inv } x \otimes \text{inv } j\})$   
**proof**  
 show  $x \otimes \text{inv } h \otimes \text{inv } x \in H$   
 by (simp add: *inv-op-closed2* prems)  
 show  $h \otimes \text{inv } x \in \{\text{inv } x \otimes \text{inv } (x \otimes \text{inv } h \otimes \text{inv } x)\}$   
 by (simp add: prems *m-assoc* [*symmetric*] *inv-mult-group*)  
 qed  
 qed

### 6.3.2 Theorems for $<\#>$ with $\#>$ or $<\#$ .

**lemma** (in group) *setmult-rcos-assoc*:  
 $\llbracket H \subseteq \text{carrier } G; K \subseteq \text{carrier } G; x \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket$   
 $\implies H <\#> (K \#> x) = (H <\#> K) \#> x$   
**by** (force simp add: *r-coset-def set-mult-def m-assoc*)

**lemma** (in group) *rcos-assoc-lcos*:  
 $\llbracket H \subseteq \text{carrier } G; K \subseteq \text{carrier } G; x \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket$   
 $\implies (H \#> x) <\#> K = H <\#> (x <\#> K)$   
**by** (force simp add: *r-coset-def l-coset-def set-mult-def m-assoc*)

**lemma** (in normal) *rcos-mult-step1*:  
 $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket$   
 $\implies (H \#> x) <\#> (H \#> y) = (H <\#> (x <\#> H)) \#> y$   
**by** (simp add: *setmult-rcos-assoc subset*  
*r-coset-subset-G l-coset-subset-G rcos-assoc-lcos*)

**lemma** (in normal) *rcos-mult-step2*:  
 $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket$   
 $\implies (H <\#> (x <\#> H)) \#> y = (H <\#> (H \#> x)) \#> y$   
**by** (insert *coset-eq*, simp add: *normal-def*)

**lemma** (in normal) rcos-mult-step3:  
 $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket$   
 $\implies (H <\#> (H \#> x)) \#> y = H \#> (x \otimes y)$   
**by** (simp add: setmult-rcos-assoc coset-mult-assoc  
 subgroup-mult-id subset prems)

**lemma** (in normal) rcos-sum:  
 $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket$   
 $\implies (H \#> x) <\#> (H \#> y) = H \#> (x \otimes y)$   
**by** (simp add: rcos-mult-step1 rcos-mult-step2 rcos-mult-step3)

**lemma** (in normal) rcosets-mult-eq:  $M \in \text{rcosets } H \implies H <\#> M = M$   
 — generalizes subgroup-mult-id  
**by** (auto simp add: RCOSETS-def subset  
 setmult-rcos-assoc subgroup-mult-id prems)

### 6.3.3 An Equivalence Relation

**constdefs** (structure  $G$ )  
 $r\text{-congruent} :: [('a, 'b)\text{monoid-scheme}, 'a \text{ set}] \Rightarrow ('a * 'a) \text{ set}$   
 $(r\text{cong1 } -)$   
 $r\text{cong } H \equiv \{(x, y). x \in \text{carrier } G \ \& \ y \in \text{carrier } G \ \& \ \text{inv } x \otimes y \in H\}$

**lemma** (in subgroup) equiv-rcong:  
**includes** group  $G$   
**shows** equiv (carrier  $G$ ) (rcong  $H$ )  
**proof** (intro equiv.intro)  
**show** refl (carrier  $G$ ) (rcong  $H$ )  
**by** (auto simp add: r-congruent-def refl-def)  
**next**  
**show** sym (rcong  $H$ )  
**proof** (simp add: r-congruent-def sym-def, clarify)  
**fix**  $x \ y$   
**assume** [simp]:  $x \in \text{carrier } G \ y \in \text{carrier } G$   
**and**  $\text{inv } x \otimes y \in H$   
**hence**  $\text{inv } (\text{inv } x \otimes y) \in H$  **by** (simp add: m-inv-closed)  
**thus**  $\text{inv } y \otimes x \in H$  **by** (simp add: inv-mult-group)  
**qed**  
**next**  
**show** trans (rcong  $H$ )  
**proof** (simp add: r-congruent-def trans-def, clarify)  
**fix**  $x \ y \ z$   
**assume** [simp]:  $x \in \text{carrier } G \ y \in \text{carrier } G \ z \in \text{carrier } G$   
**and**  $\text{inv } x \otimes y \in H$  **and**  $\text{inv } y \otimes z \in H$   
**hence**  $(\text{inv } x \otimes y) \otimes (\text{inv } y \otimes z) \in H$  **by** simp  
**hence**  $\text{inv } x \otimes (y \otimes \text{inv } y) \otimes z \in H$  **by** (simp add: m-assoc del: r-inv)  
**thus**  $\text{inv } x \otimes z \in H$  **by** simp  
**qed**

qed

Equivalence classes of *rcong* correspond to left cosets. Was there a mistake in the definitions? I’d have expected them to correspond to right cosets.

```
lemma (in subgroup) l-coset-eq-rcong:
  includes group G
  assumes a: a ∈ carrier G
  shows a <# H = rcong H “ {a}
by (force simp add: r-congruent-def l-coset-def m-assoc [symmetric] a )
```

### 6.3.4 Two distinct right cosets are disjoint

```
lemma (in group) rcos-equation:
  includes subgroup H G
  shows
    [[ha ⊗ a = h ⊗ b; a ∈ carrier G; b ∈ carrier G;
     h ∈ H; ha ∈ H; hb ∈ H]
     ⇒ hb ⊗ a ∈ (⋃ h∈H. {h ⊗ b})]
  apply (rule UN-I [of hb ⊗ ((inv ha) ⊗ h)])
  apply (simp add: )
  apply (simp add: m-assoc transpose-inv)
done
```

```
lemma (in group) rcos-disjoint:
  includes subgroup H G
  shows [[a ∈ rcosets H; b ∈ rcosets H; a≠b] ⇒ a ∩ b = {}]
  apply (simp add: RCOSETS-def r-coset-def)
  apply (blast intro: rcos-equation prems sym)
done
```

## 6.4 Order of a Group and Lagrange’s Theorem

```
constdefs
  order :: ('a, 'b) monoid-scheme ⇒ nat
  order S ≡ card (carrier S)
```

```
lemma (in group) rcos-self:
  includes subgroup
  shows x ∈ carrier G ⇒ x ∈ H #> x
  apply (simp add: r-coset-def)
  apply (rule-tac x=1 in bexI)
  apply (auto simp add: )
done
```

```
lemma (in group) rcosets-part-G:
  includes subgroup
  shows ⋃ (rcosets H) = carrier G
  apply (rule equalityI)
  apply (force simp add: RCOSETS-def r-coset-def)
```

**apply** (*auto simp add: RCOSETS-def intro: rcos-self prems*)  
**done**

**lemma** (*in group*) *cosets-finite*:  
 $\llbracket c \in \text{rcosets } H; H \subseteq \text{carrier } G; \text{finite } (\text{carrier } G) \rrbracket \implies \text{finite } c$   
**apply** (*auto simp add: RCOSETS-def*)  
**apply** (*simp add: r-coset-subset-G [THEN finite-subset]*)  
**done**

The next two lemmas support the proof of *card-cosets-equal*.

**lemma** (*in group*) *inj-on-f*:  
 $\llbracket H \subseteq \text{carrier } G; a \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies \text{inj-on } (\lambda y. y \otimes \text{inv } a) (H \#> a)$   
**apply** (*rule inj-onI*)  
**apply** (*subgoal-tac x \in carrier G & y \in carrier G*)  
**prefer 2 apply** (*blast intro: r-coset-subset-G [THEN subsetD]*)  
**apply** (*simp add: subsetD*)  
**done**

**lemma** (*in group*) *inj-on-g*:  
 $\llbracket H \subseteq \text{carrier } G; a \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies \text{inj-on } (\lambda y. y \otimes a) H$   
**by** (*force simp add: inj-on-def subsetD*)

**lemma** (*in group*) *card-cosets-equal*:  
 $\llbracket c \in \text{rcosets } H; H \subseteq \text{carrier } G; \text{finite}(\text{carrier } G) \rrbracket$   
 $\implies \text{card } c = \text{card } H$   
**apply** (*auto simp add: RCOSETS-def*)  
**apply** (*rule card-bij-eq*)  
**apply** (*rule inj-on-f, assumption+*)  
**apply** (*force simp add: m-assoc subsetD r-coset-def*)  
**apply** (*rule inj-on-g, assumption+*)  
**apply** (*force simp add: m-assoc subsetD r-coset-def*)

The sets  $H \#> a$  and  $H$  are finite.

**apply** (*simp add: r-coset-subset-G [THEN finite-subset]*)  
**apply** (*blast intro: finite-subset*)  
**done**

**lemma** (*in group*) *rcosets-subset-PowG*:  
 $\text{subgroup } H \ G \implies \text{rcosets } H \subseteq \text{Pow}(\text{carrier } G)$   
**apply** (*simp add: RCOSETS-def*)  
**apply** (*blast dest: r-coset-subset-G subgroup.subset*)  
**done**

**theorem** (*in group*) *lagrange*:  
 $\llbracket \text{finite}(\text{carrier } G); \text{subgroup } H \ G \rrbracket$   
 $\implies \text{card}(\text{rcosets } H) * \text{card}(H) = \text{order}(G)$   
**apply** (*simp (no-asm-simp) add: order-def rcosets-part-G [symmetric]*)  
**apply** (*subst mult-commute*)

```

apply (rule card-partition)
  apply (simp add: rcosets-subset-PowG [THEN finite-subset])
  apply (simp add: rcosets-part-G)
  apply (simp add: card-cosets-equal subgroup.subset)
apply (simp add: rcos-disjoint)
done

```

## 6.5 Quotient Groups: Factorization of a Group

**constdefs**

```

FactGroup :: [('a,'b) monoid-scheme, 'a set]  $\Rightarrow$  ('a set) monoid
  (infixl Mod 65)
— Actually defined for groups rather than monoids
FactGroup G H  $\equiv$ 
  ( $\langle$ carrier = rcosetsG H, mult = set-mult G, one = H $\rangle$ )

```

**lemma** (**in normal**) setmult-closed:

```

 $\llbracket K1 \in \text{rcosets } H; K2 \in \text{rcosets } H \rrbracket \Longrightarrow K1 <\#> K2 \in \text{rcosets } H$ 
by (auto simp add: rcos-sum RCOSETS-def)

```

**lemma** (**in normal**) setinv-closed:

```

 $K \in \text{rcosets } H \Longrightarrow \text{set-inv } K \in \text{rcosets } H$ 
by (auto simp add: rcos-inv RCOSETS-def)

```

**lemma** (**in normal**) rcosets-assoc:

```

 $\llbracket M1 \in \text{rcosets } H; M2 \in \text{rcosets } H; M3 \in \text{rcosets } H \rrbracket$ 
 $\Longrightarrow M1 <\#> M2 <\#> M3 = M1 <\#> (M2 <\#> M3)$ 
by (auto simp add: RCOSETS-def rcos-sum m-assoc)

```

**lemma** (**in subgroup**) subgroup-in-rcosets:

```

includes group G
shows  $H \in \text{rcosets } H$ 
proof —
  have  $H \#> 1 = H$ 
  by (rule coset-join2, auto)
  then show ?thesis
  by (auto simp add: RCOSETS-def)
qed

```

**lemma** (**in normal**) rcosets-inv-mult-group-eq:

```

 $M \in \text{rcosets } H \Longrightarrow \text{set-inv } M <\#> M = H$ 
by (auto simp add: RCOSETS-def rcos-inv rcos-sum subgroup.subset prems)

```

**theorem** (**in normal**) factorgroup-is-group:

```

group (G Mod H)
apply (simp add: FactGroup-def)
apply (rule groupI)
  apply (simp add: setmult-closed)
  apply (simp add: normal-imp-subgroup subgroup-in-rcosets [OF is-group])

```

```

apply (simp add: restrictI setmult-closed rcosets-assoc)
apply (simp add: normal-imp-subgroup
           subgroup-in-rcosets rcosets-mult-eq)
apply (auto dest: rcosets-inv-mult-group-eq simp add: setinv-closed)
done

```

```

lemma mult-FactGroup [simp]:  $X \otimes_{(G \text{ Mod } H)} X' = X <\#>_G X'$ 
by (simp add: FactGroup-def)

```

```

lemma (in normal) inv-FactGroup:
   $X \in \text{carrier } (G \text{ Mod } H) \implies \text{inv}_{G \text{ Mod } H} X = \text{set-inv } X$ 
apply (rule group.inv-equality [OF factorgroup-is-group])
apply (simp-all add: FactGroup-def setinv-closed rcosets-inv-mult-group-eq)
done

```

The coset map is a homomorphism from  $G$  to the quotient group  $G \text{ Mod } H$

```

lemma (in normal) r-coset-hom-Mod:
   $(\lambda a. H \#> a) \in \text{hom } G \ (G \text{ Mod } H)$ 
by (auto simp add: FactGroup-def RCOSETS-def Pi-def hom-def rcos-sum)

```

## 6.6 The First Isomorphism Theorem

The quotient by the kernel of a homomorphism is isomorphic to the range of that homomorphism.

```

constdefs
  kernel :: ('a, 'm) monoid-scheme  $\Rightarrow$  ('b, 'n) monoid-scheme  $\Rightarrow$ 
    ('a  $\Rightarrow$  'b)  $\Rightarrow$  'a set
  — the kernel of a homomorphism
  kernel  $G \ H \ h \equiv \{x. x \in \text{carrier } G \ \& \ h \ x = \mathbf{1}_H\}$ 

```

```

lemma (in group-hom) subgroup-kernel: subgroup (kernel  $G \ H \ h$ )  $G$ 
apply (rule subgroup.intro)
apply (auto simp add: kernel-def group.intro prems)
done

```

The kernel of a homomorphism is a normal subgroup

```

lemma (in group-hom) normal-kernel: (kernel  $G \ H \ h$ )  $\triangleleft G$ 
apply (simp add: group.normal-inv-iff subgroup-kernel group.intro prems)
apply (simp add: kernel-def)
done

```

```

lemma (in group-hom) FactGroup-nonempty:
  assumes  $X: X \in \text{carrier } (G \text{ Mod } \text{kernel } G \ H \ h)$ 
  shows  $X \neq \{\}$ 
proof —
  from  $X$ 
  obtain  $g$  where  $g \in \text{carrier } G$ 
    and  $X = \text{kernel } G \ H \ h \ \#> g$ 

```

```

  by (auto simp add: FactGroup-def RCOSETS-def)
  thus ?thesis
  by (auto simp add: kernel-def r-coset-def image-def intro: hom-one)
qed

```

```

lemma (in group-hom) FactGroup-contents-mem:
  assumes  $X: X \in \text{carrier } (G \text{ Mod } (\text{kernel } G \ H \ h))$ 
  shows  $\text{contents } (h'X) \in \text{carrier } H$ 
proof -
  from  $X$ 
  obtain  $g$  where  $g: g \in \text{carrier } G$ 
    and  $X = \text{kernel } G \ H \ h \ \#> \ g$ 
  by (auto simp add: FactGroup-def RCOSETS-def)
  hence  $h'X = \{h \ g\}$  by (auto simp add: kernel-def r-coset-def image-def  $g$ )
  thus ?thesis by (auto simp add:  $g$ )
qed

```

```

lemma (in group-hom) FactGroup-hom:
  ( $\lambda X. \text{contents } (h'X) \in \text{hom } (G \text{ Mod } (\text{kernel } G \ H \ h)) \ H$ )
apply (simp add: hom-def FactGroup-contents-mem normal.factorgroup-is-group
[OF normal-kernel] group.axioms monoid.m-closed)
proof (simp add: hom-def funcsetI FactGroup-contents-mem, intro ballI)
  fix  $X$  and  $X'$ 
  assume  $X: X \in \text{carrier } (G \text{ Mod } \text{kernel } G \ H \ h)$ 
    and  $X': X' \in \text{carrier } (G \text{ Mod } \text{kernel } G \ H \ h)$ 
  then
  obtain  $g$  and  $g'$ 
    where  $g \in \text{carrier } G$  and  $g' \in \text{carrier } G$ 
      and  $X = \text{kernel } G \ H \ h \ \#> \ g$  and  $X' = \text{kernel } G \ H \ h \ \#> \ g'$ 
  by (auto simp add: FactGroup-def RCOSETS-def)
  hence  $\text{all: } \forall x \in X. h \ x = h \ g \ \forall x \in X'. h \ x = h \ g'$ 
    and  $X_{\text{sub}}: X \subseteq \text{carrier } G$  and  $X'_{\text{sub}}: X' \subseteq \text{carrier } G$ 
  by (force simp add: kernel-def r-coset-def image-def)+
  hence  $h' (X \ <\#> \ X') = \{h \ g \otimes_H h \ g'\}$  using  $X \ X'$ 
  by (auto dest!: FactGroup-nonempty
    simp add: set-mult-def image-eq-UN
      subsetD [OF  $X_{\text{sub}}$ ] subsetD [OF  $X'_{\text{sub}}$ ])
  thus  $\text{contents } (h' (X \ <\#> \ X')) = \text{contents } (h' X) \otimes_H \text{contents } (h' X')$ 
  by (simp add: all image-eq-UN FactGroup-nonempty  $X \ X'$ )
qed

```

Lemma for the following injectivity result

```

lemma (in group-hom) FactGroup-subset:
   $\llbracket g \in \text{carrier } G; g' \in \text{carrier } G; h \ g = h \ g' \rrbracket$ 
   $\implies \text{kernel } G \ H \ h \ \#> \ g \subseteq \text{kernel } G \ H \ h \ \#> \ g'$ 
apply (clarsimp simp add: kernel-def r-coset-def image-def)
apply (rename-tac  $y$ )
apply (rule-tac  $x=y \otimes g \otimes \text{inv } g'$  in exI)

```

**apply** (*simp add: G.m-assoc*)  
**done**

**lemma** (*in group-hom*) *FactGroup-inj-on*:  
 $\text{inj-on } (\lambda X. \text{contents } (h \text{ ‘ } X)) \text{ (carrier (G Mod kernel G H h))}$   
**proof** (*simp add: inj-on-def, clarify*)  
**fix**  $X$  **and**  $X'$   
**assume**  $X: X \in \text{carrier } (G \text{ Mod kernel G H h})$   
**and**  $X': X' \in \text{carrier } (G \text{ Mod kernel G H h})$   
**then**  
**obtain**  $g$  **and**  $g'$   
**where**  $gX: g \in \text{carrier } G \quad g' \in \text{carrier } G$   
 $X = \text{kernel } G \text{ H h} \#> g \quad X' = \text{kernel } G \text{ H h} \#> g'$   
**by** (*auto simp add: FactGroup-def RCOSETS-def*)  
**hence**  $\text{all: } \forall x \in X. h \ x = h \ g \quad \forall x \in X'. h \ x = h \ g'$   
**by** (*force simp add: kernel-def r-coset-def image-def*) +  
**assume**  $\text{contents } (h \text{ ‘ } X) = \text{contents } (h \text{ ‘ } X')$   
**hence**  $h: h \ g = h \ g'$   
**by** (*simp add: image-eq-UN all FactGroup-nonempty X X'*)  
**show**  $X=X'$  **by** (*rule equalityI*) (*simp-all add: FactGroup-subset h gX*)  
**qed**

If the homomorphism  $h$  is onto  $H$ , then so is the homomorphism from the quotient group

**lemma** (*in group-hom*) *FactGroup-onto*:  
**assumes**  $h: h \text{ ‘ carrier } G = \text{carrier } H$   
**shows**  $(\lambda X. \text{contents } (h \text{ ‘ } X)) \text{ ‘ carrier } (G \text{ Mod kernel G H h}) = \text{carrier } H$   
**proof**  
**show**  $(\lambda X. \text{contents } (h \text{ ‘ } X)) \text{ ‘ carrier } (G \text{ Mod kernel G H h}) \subseteq \text{carrier } H$   
**by** (*auto simp add: FactGroup-contents-mem*)  
**show**  $\text{carrier } H \subseteq (\lambda X. \text{contents } (h \text{ ‘ } X)) \text{ ‘ carrier } (G \text{ Mod kernel G H h})$   
**proof**  
**fix**  $y$   
**assume**  $y: y \in \text{carrier } H$   
**with**  $h$  **obtain**  $g$  **where**  $g: g \in \text{carrier } G \quad h \ g = y$   
**by** (*blast elim: equalityE*)  
**hence**  $(\bigcup x \in \text{kernel } G \text{ H h} \#> g. \{h \ x\}) = \{y\}$   
**by** (*auto simp add: y kernel-def r-coset-def*)  
**with**  $g$  **show**  $y \in (\lambda X. \text{contents } (h \text{ ‘ } X)) \text{ ‘ carrier } (G \text{ Mod kernel G H h})$   
**by** (*auto intro!: bexI simp add: FactGroup-def RCOSETS-def image-eq-UN*)  
**qed**  
**qed**

If  $h$  is a homomorphism from  $G$  onto  $H$ , then the quotient group  $G \text{ Mod kernel } G \text{ H h}$  is isomorphic to  $H$ .

**theorem** (*in group-hom*) *FactGroup-iso*:  
 $h \text{ ‘ carrier } G = \text{carrier } H$   
 $\implies (\lambda X. \text{contents } (h \text{ ‘ } X)) \in (G \text{ Mod } (\text{kernel } G \text{ H h})) \cong H$   
**by** (*simp add: iso-def FactGroup-hom FactGroup-inj-on bij-betw-def*)



*FactGroup-onto*)

end

## 7 Sylow: Sylow’s theorem

theory *Sylow* imports *Coset* begin

See also [3].

The combinatorial argument is in theory *Exponent*

locale *sylow* = group +  
 fixes *p* and *a* and *m* and *calM* and *RelM*  
 assumes *prime-p*: prime *p*  
   and *order-G*:  $\text{order}(G) = (p^a) * m$   
   and *finite-G* [iff]: finite (*carrier* *G*)  
 defines *calM* == {*s*. *s* ⊆ *carrier*(*G*) & *card*(*s*) =  $p^a$ }  
   and *RelM* == {(*N1*,*N2*). *N1* ∈ *calM* & *N2* ∈ *calM* &  
     ( $\exists g \in \text{carrier}(G). N1 = (N2 \#> g)$ ) }

lemma (in *sylow*) *RelM-refl*: refl *calM* *RelM*  
 apply (auto simp add: refl-def *RelM*-def *calM*-def)  
 apply (blast intro!: *coset-mult-one* [symmetric])  
 done

lemma (in *sylow*) *RelM-sym*: sym *RelM*  
 proof (unfold sym-def *RelM*-def, clarify)  
   fix *y g*  
   assume *y* ∈ *calM*  
   and *g*: *g* ∈ *carrier* *G*  
   hence *y* = *y* #> *g* #> (*inv* *g*) by (simp add: *coset-mult-assoc* *calM*-def)  
   thus  $\exists g' \in \text{carrier } G. y = y \#> g \#> g'$   
   by (blast intro: *g* *inv-closed*)  
 qed

lemma (in *sylow*) *RelM-trans*: trans *RelM*  
 by (auto simp add: trans-def *RelM*-def *calM*-def *coset-mult-assoc*)

lemma (in *sylow*) *RelM-equiv*: equiv *calM* *RelM*  
 apply (unfold equiv-def)  
 apply (blast intro: *RelM-refl* *RelM-sym* *RelM-trans*)  
 done

lemma (in *sylow*) *M-subset-calM-prep*:  $M' \in \text{calM} // \text{RelM} ==> M' \subseteq \text{calM}$   
 apply (unfold *RelM*-def)  
 apply (blast elim!: *quotientE*)  
 done

## 7.1 Main Part of the Proof

**locale** *syLOW-central* = *syLOW* +  
**fixes** *H* **and** *M1* **and** *M*  
**assumes** *M-in-quot*:  $M \in \text{calM} // \text{RelM}$   
**and** *not-dvd-M*:  $\sim(p \wedge \text{Suc}(\text{exponent } p \ m) \ \text{dvd } \text{card}(M))$   
**and** *M1-in-M*:  $M1 \in M$   
**defines**  $H == \{g. g \in \text{carrier } G \ \& \ M1 \ \#> \ g = M1\}$

**lemma** (**in** *syLOW-central*) *M-subset-calM*:  $M \subseteq \text{calM}$   
**by** (*rule M-in-quot [THEN M-subset-calM-prep]*)

**lemma** (**in** *syLOW-central*) *card-M1*:  $\text{card}(M1) = p^a$   
**apply** (*cut-tac M-subset-calM M1-in-M*)  
**apply** (*simp add: calM-def, blast*)  
**done**

**lemma** *card-nonempty*:  $0 < \text{card}(S) ==> S \neq \{\}$   
**by** *force*

**lemma** (**in** *syLOW-central*) *exists-x-in-M1*:  $\exists x. x \in M1$   
**apply** (*subgoal-tac 0 < card M1*)  
**apply** (*blast dest: card-nonempty*)  
**apply** (*cut-tac prime-p [THEN prime-imp-one-less]*)  
**apply** (*simp (no-asm-simp) add: card-M1*)  
**done**

**lemma** (**in** *syLOW-central*) *M1-subset-G* [*simp*]:  $M1 \subseteq \text{carrier } G$   
**apply** (*rule subsetD [THEN PowD]*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac [2] M1-in-M*)  
**apply** (*rule M-subset-calM [THEN subset-trans]*)  
**apply** (*auto simp add: calM-def*)  
**done**

**lemma** (**in** *syLOW-central*) *M1-inj-H*:  $\exists f \in H \rightarrow M1. \text{inj-on } f \ H$   
**proof** –  
**from** *exists-x-in-M1* **obtain** *m1* **where** *m1M*:  $m1 \in M1..$   
**have** *m1G*:  $m1 \in \text{carrier } G$  **by** (*simp add: m1M M1-subset-G [THEN subsetD]*)  
**show** *?thesis*  
**proof**  
**show** *inj-on*  $(\lambda z \in H. m1 \otimes z) \ H$   
**by** (*simp add: inj-on-def l-cancel [of m1 x y, THEN iffD1] H-def m1G*)  
**show** *restrict*  $(op \otimes m1) \ H \in H \rightarrow M1$   
**proof** (*rule restrictI*)  
**fix** *z* **assume** *zH*:  $z \in H$   
**show**  $m1 \otimes z \in M1$   
**proof** –  
**from** *zH*  
**have** *zG*:  $z \in \text{carrier } G$  **and** *M1zeq*:  $M1 \ \#> \ z = M1$   
**by** (*auto simp add: H-def*)

```

      show ?thesis
    by (rule subst [OF M1zeq], simp add: m1M zG rcosI)
  qed
qed
qed
qed

```

## 7.2 Discharging the Assumptions of *sylow-central*

```

lemma (in sylow) EmptyNotInEquivSet: {}  $\notin$  calM // RelM
by (blast elim!: quotientE dest: RelM-equiv [THEN equiv-class-self])

```

```

lemma (in sylow) existsM1inM: M  $\in$  calM // RelM ==>  $\exists$  M1. M1  $\in$  M
apply (subgoal-tac M  $\neq$  {})
  apply blast
apply (cut-tac EmptyNotInEquivSet, blast)
done

```

```

lemma (in sylow) zero-less-o-G: 0 < order(G)
apply (unfold order-def)
apply (blast intro: one-closed zero-less-card-empty)
done

```

```

lemma (in sylow) zero-less-m: 0 < m
apply (cut-tac zero-less-o-G)
apply (simp add: order-G)
done

```

```

lemma (in sylow) card-calM: card(calM) = (p^a) * m choose p^a
by (simp add: calM-def n-subsets order-G [symmetric] order-def)

```

```

lemma (in sylow) zero-less-card-calM: 0 < card calM
by (simp add: card-calM zero-less-binomial le-extend-mult zero-less-m)

```

```

lemma (in sylow) max-p-div-calM:
  ~ (p ^ Suc(exponent p m) dvd card(calM))
apply (subgoal-tac exponent p m = exponent p (card calM) )
  apply (cut-tac zero-less-card-calM prime-p)
  apply (force dest: power-Suc-exponent-Not-dvd)
apply (simp add: card-calM zero-less-m [THEN const-p-fac])
done

```

```

lemma (in sylow) finite-calM: finite calM
apply (unfold calM-def)
apply (rule-tac B = Pow (carrier G) in finite-subset)
apply auto
done

```

```

lemma (in sylow) lemma-A1:

```

```

     $\exists M \in \text{calM} // \text{RelM}. \sim (p \wedge \text{Suc}(\text{exponent } p \ m) \ \text{dvd} \ \text{card}(M))$ 
  apply (rule max-p-div-calM [THEN contrapos-mp])
  apply (simp add: finite-calM equiv-imp-dvd-card [OF - RelM-equiv])
done

```

### 7.2.1 Introduction and Destruct Rules for $H$

```

lemma (in sylow-central) H-I:  $[|g \in \text{carrier } G; M1 \#> g = M1|] \implies g \in H$ 
by (simp add: H-def)

```

```

lemma (in sylow-central) H-into-carrier-G:  $x \in H \implies x \in \text{carrier } G$ 
by (simp add: H-def)

```

```

lemma (in sylow-central) in-H-imp-eq:  $g : H \implies M1 \#> g = M1$ 
by (simp add: H-def)

```

```

lemma (in sylow-central) H-m-closed:  $[|x \in H; y \in H|] \implies x \otimes y \in H$ 
apply (unfold H-def)
apply (simp add: coset-mult-assoc [symmetric] m-closed)
done

```

```

lemma (in sylow-central) H-not-empty:  $H \neq \{\}$ 
apply (simp add: H-def)
apply (rule exI [of - 1], simp)
done

```

```

lemma (in sylow-central) H-is-subgroup: subgroup H G
apply (rule subgroupI)
apply (rule subsetI)
apply (erule H-into-carrier-G)
apply (rule H-not-empty)
apply (simp add: H-def, clarify)
apply (erule-tac P = %z. ?lhs(z) = M1 in subst)
apply (simp add: coset-mult-assoc)
apply (blast intro: H-m-closed)
done

```

```

lemma (in sylow-central) rcosetGM1g-subset-G:
   $[|g \in \text{carrier } G; x \in M1 \#> g|] \implies x \in \text{carrier } G$ 
by (blast intro: M1-subset-G [THEN r-coset-subset-G, THEN subsetD])

```

```

lemma (in sylow-central) finite-M1: finite M1
by (rule finite-subset [OF M1-subset-G finite-G])

```

```

lemma (in sylow-central) finite-rcosetGM1g:  $g \in \text{carrier } G \implies \text{finite } (M1 \#> g)$ 
apply (rule finite-subset)
apply (rule subsetI)
apply (erule rcosetGM1g-subset-G, assumption)

```

**apply** (*rule finite-G*)  
**done**

**lemma** (*in sylow-central*) *M1-cardeg-rcosetGM1g*:  
 $g \in \text{carrier } G \implies \text{card}(M1 \#> g) = \text{card}(M1)$   
**by** (*simp (no-asm-simp) add: M1-subset-G card-cosets-equal rcosetsI*)

**lemma** (*in sylow-central*) *M1-RelM-rcosetGM1g*:  
 $g \in \text{carrier } G \implies (M1, M1 \#> g) \in \text{RelM}$   
**apply** (*simp (no-asm) add: RelM-def calM-def card-M1 M1-subset-G*)  
**apply** (*rule conjI*)  
**apply** (*blast intro: rcosetGM1g-subset-G*)  
**apply** (*simp (no-asm-simp) add: card-M1 M1-cardeg-rcosetGM1g*)  
**apply** (*rule bexI [of - inv g]*)  
**apply** (*simp-all add: coset-mult-assoc M1-subset-G*)  
**done**

### 7.3 Equal Cardinalities of $M$ and the Set of Cosets

Injectons between  $M$  and  $\text{rcosets}_G H$  show that their cardinalities are equal.

**lemma** *ElemClassEquiv*:  
 $[| \text{equiv } A \text{ } r; C \in A // r |] \implies \forall x \in C. \forall y \in C. (x,y) \in r$   
**by** (*unfold equiv-def quotient-def sym-def trans-def, blast*)

**lemma** (*in sylow-central*) *M-elem-map*:  
 $M2 \in M \implies \exists g. g \in \text{carrier } G \ \& \ M1 \#> g = M2$   
**apply** (*cut-tac M1-in-M M-in-quot [THEN RelM-equiv [THEN ElemClassEquiv]]*)  
**apply** (*simp add: RelM-def*)  
**apply** (*blast dest!: bspec*)  
**done**

**lemmas** (*in sylow-central*) *M-elem-map-carrier =*  
 $M\text{-elem-map } [THEN \text{someI-ex}, THEN \text{conjunct1}]$

**lemmas** (*in sylow-central*) *M-elem-map-eq =*  
 $M\text{-elem-map } [THEN \text{someI-ex}, THEN \text{conjunct2}]$

**lemma** (*in sylow-central*) *M-funcset-rcosets-H*:  
 $(\%x:M. H \#> (\text{SOME } g. g \in \text{carrier } G \ \& \ M1 \#> g = x)) \in M \rightarrow \text{rcosets } H$   
**apply** (*rule rcosetsI [THEN restrictI]*)  
**apply** (*rule H-is-subgroup [THEN subgroup.subset]*)  
**apply** (*erule M-elem-map-carrier*)  
**done**

**lemma** (*in sylow-central*) *inj-M-GmodH*:  $\exists f \in M \rightarrow \text{rcosets } H. \text{inj-on } f \ M$   
**apply** (*rule bexI*)  
**apply** (*rule-tac [2] M-funcset-rcosets-H*)  
**apply** (*rule inj-onI, simp*)  
**apply** (*rule trans [OF - M-elem-map-eq]*)

```

prefer 2 apply assumption
apply (rule M-elem-map-eq [symmetric, THEN trans], assumption)
apply (rule coset-mult-inv1)
apply (erule-tac [2] M-elem-map-carrier)+
apply (rule-tac [2] M1-subset-G)
apply (rule coset-join1 [THEN in-H-imp-eq])
apply (rule-tac [3] H-is-subgroup)
prefer 2 apply (blast intro: m-closed M-elem-map-carrier inv-closed)
apply (simp add: coset-mult-inv2 H-def M-elem-map-carrier subset-def)
done

```

### 7.3.1 The opposite injection

```

lemma (in sylow-central) H-elem-map:
   $H1 \in \text{rcosets } H \implies \exists g. g \in \text{carrier } G \ \& \ H \#> g = H1$ 
by (auto simp add: RCOSETS-def)

```

```

lemmas (in sylow-central) H-elem-map-carrier =
  H-elem-map [THEN someI-ex, THEN conjunct1]

```

```

lemmas (in sylow-central) H-elem-map-eq =
  H-elem-map [THEN someI-ex, THEN conjunct2]

```

```

lemma EquivElemClass:
   $[\text{equiv } A \ r; M \in A/r; M1 \in M; (M1, M2) \in r] \implies M2 \in M$ 
by (unfold equiv-def quotient-def sym-def trans-def, blast)

```

```

lemma (in sylow-central) rcosets-H-funcset-M:
   $(\lambda C \in \text{rcosets } H. M1 \#> (@g. g \in \text{carrier } G \wedge H \#> g = C)) \in \text{rcosets } H \rightarrow M$ 
apply (simp add: RCOSETS-def)
apply (fast intro: someI2
  intro!: restrictI M1-in-M
  EquivElemClass [OF RelM-equiv M-in-quot - M1-RelM-rcosetGM1g])
done

```

close to a duplicate of *inj-M-GmodH*

```

lemma (in sylow-central) inj-GmodH-M:
   $\exists g \in \text{rcosets } H \rightarrow M. \text{inj-on } g \ (\text{rcosets } H)$ 
apply (rule bexI)
apply (rule-tac [2] rcosets-H-funcset-M)
apply (rule inj-onI)
apply (simp)
apply (rule trans [OF - H-elem-map-eq])
prefer 2 apply assumption
apply (rule H-elem-map-eq [symmetric, THEN trans], assumption)
apply (rule coset-mult-inv1)

```

```

apply (erule-tac [2] H-elem-map-carrier)+
apply (rule-tac [2] H-is-subgroup [THEN subgroup.subset])
apply (rule coset-join2)
apply (blast intro: m-closed inv-closed H-elem-map-carrier)
apply (rule H-is-subgroup)
apply (simp add: H-I coset-mult-inv2 M1-subset-G H-elem-map-carrier)
done

```

```

lemma (in syLOW-central) calM-subset-PowG:  $\text{calM} \subseteq \text{Pow}(\text{carrier } G)$ 
by (auto simp add: calM-def)

```

```

lemma (in syLOW-central) finite-M: finite M
apply (rule finite-subset)
apply (rule M-subset-calM [THEN subset-trans])
apply (rule calM-subset-PowG, blast)
done

```

```

lemma (in syLOW-central) cardMeqIndexH:  $\text{card}(M) = \text{card}(\text{rcosets } H)$ 
apply (insert inj-M-GmodH inj-GmodH-M)
apply (blast intro: card-bij finite-M H-is-subgroup
      rcosets-subset-PowG [THEN finite-subset]
      finite-Pow-iff [THEN iffD2])
done

```

```

lemma (in syLOW-central) index-lem:  $\text{card}(M) * \text{card}(H) = \text{order}(G)$ 
by (simp add: cardMeqIndexH lagrange H-is-subgroup)

```

```

lemma (in syLOW-central) lemma-leq1:  $p^a \leq \text{card}(H)$ 
apply (rule dvd-imp-le)
  apply (rule div-combine [OF prime-p not-dvd-M])
  prefer 2 apply (blast intro: subgroup.finite-imp-card-positive H-is-subgroup)
apply (simp add: index-lem order-G power-add mult-dvd-mono power-exponent-dvd
      zero-less-m)
done

```

```

lemma (in syLOW-central) lemma-leq2:  $\text{card}(H) \leq p^a$ 
apply (subst card-M1 [symmetric])
apply (cut-tac M1-inj-H)
apply (blast intro!: M1-subset-G intro:
      card-inj H-into-carrier-G finite-subset [OF - finite-G])
done

```

```

lemma (in syLOW-central) card-H-eq:  $\text{card}(H) = p^a$ 
by (blast intro: le-anti-sym lemma-leq1 lemma-leq2)

```

```

lemma (in syLOW) syLOW-thm:  $\exists H. \text{subgroup } H \ G \ \& \ \text{card}(H) = p^a$ 
apply (cut-tac lemma-A1, clarify)
apply (frule existsM1inM, clarify)

```

```

apply (subgoal-tac sylow-central  $G$   $p$   $a$   $m$   $M1$   $M$ )
apply (blast dest: sylow-central. $H$ -is-subgroup sylow-central.card- $H$ -eq)
apply (simp add: sylow-central-def sylow-central-axioms-def prems)
done

```

Needed because the locale’s automatic definition refers to *semigroup*  $G$  and *group-axioms*  $G$  rather than simply to *group*  $G$ .

```

lemma sylow-eq: sylow  $G$   $p$   $a$   $m$  = (group  $G$  & sylow-axioms  $G$   $p$   $a$   $m$ )
by (simp add: sylow-def group-def)

```

```

theorem sylow-thm:

```

```

  [| prime  $p$ ; group( $G$ ); order( $G$ ) = ( $p$ ^ $a$ ) *  $m$ ; finite (carrier  $G$ )|]
  ==>  $\exists H$ . subgroup  $H$   $G$  & card( $H$ ) =  $p$ ^ $a$ 

```

```

apply (rule sylow.sylow-thm [of  $G$   $p$   $a$   $m$ ])
apply (simp add: sylow-eq sylow-axioms-def)
done

```

```

end

```

## 8 Bij: Bijections of a Set, Permutation Groups, Automorphism Groups

```

theory Bij imports Group begin

```

```

constdefs

```

```

  Bij :: 'a set  $\Rightarrow$  ('a  $\Rightarrow$  'a) set
  — Only extensional functions, since otherwise we get too many.
  Bij  $S$   $\equiv$  extensional  $S$   $\cap$  { $f$ . bij-betw  $f$   $S$   $S$ }

```

```

  BijGroup :: 'a set  $\Rightarrow$  ('a  $\Rightarrow$  'a) monoid

```

```

  BijGroup  $S$   $\equiv$ 
    ( $\lambda$ carrier = Bij  $S$ ,
      $\lambda$ mult =  $\lambda g \in$  Bij  $S$ .  $\lambda f \in$  Bij  $S$ . compose  $S$   $g$   $f$ ,
      $\lambda$ one =  $\lambda x \in S$ .  $x$ )

```

```

declare Id-compose [simp] compose-Id [simp]

```

```

lemma Bij-imp-extensional:  $f \in$  Bij  $S$   $\Longrightarrow$   $f \in$  extensional  $S$ 
by (simp add: Bij-def)

```

```

lemma Bij-imp-funcset:  $f \in$  Bij  $S$   $\Longrightarrow$   $f \in S \rightarrow S$ 
by (auto simp add: Bij-def bij-betw-imp-funcset)

```



## 8.1 Bijections Form a Group

**lemma** *restrict-Inv-Bij*:  $f \in \text{Bij } S \implies (\lambda x \in S. (\text{Inv } S \ f) \ x) \in \text{Bij } S$   
**by** (*simp add: Bij-def bij-betw-Inv*)

**lemma** *id-Bij*:  $(\lambda x \in S. x) \in \text{Bij } S$   
**by** (*auto simp add: Bij-def bij-betw-def inj-on-def*)

**lemma** *compose-Bij*:  $\llbracket x \in \text{Bij } S; y \in \text{Bij } S \rrbracket \implies \text{compose } S \ x \ y \in \text{Bij } S$   
**by** (*auto simp add: Bij-def bij-betw-compose*)

**lemma** *Bij-compose-restrict-eq*:  
 $f \in \text{Bij } S \implies \text{compose } S \ (\text{restrict } (\text{Inv } S \ f) \ S) \ f = (\lambda x \in S. x)$   
**by** (*simp add: Bij-def compose-Inv-id*)

**theorem** *group-BijGroup*: *group* (*BijGroup* *S*)  
**apply** (*simp add: BijGroup-def*)  
**apply** (*rule groupI*)  
**apply** (*simp add: compose-Bij*)  
**apply** (*simp add: id-Bij*)  
**apply** (*simp add: compose-Bij*)  
**apply** (*blast intro: compose-assoc [symmetric] Bij-imp-funcset*)  
**apply** (*simp add: id-Bij Bij-imp-funcset Bij-imp-extensional, simp*)  
**apply** (*blast intro: Bij-compose-restrict-eq restrict-Inv-Bij*)  
**done**

## 8.2 Automorphisms Form a Group

**lemma** *Bij-Inv-mem*:  $\llbracket f \in \text{Bij } S; x \in S \rrbracket \implies \text{Inv } S \ f \ x \in S$   
**by** (*simp add: Bij-def bij-betw-def Inv-mem*)

**lemma** *Bij-Inv-lemma*:  
**assumes** *eq*:  $\bigwedge x \ y. \llbracket x \in S; y \in S \rrbracket \implies h(g \ x \ y) = g \ (h \ x) \ (h \ y)$   
**shows**  $\llbracket h \in \text{Bij } S; g \in S \rightarrow S \rightarrow S; x \in S; y \in S \rrbracket$   
 $\implies \text{Inv } S \ h \ (g \ x \ y) = g \ (\text{Inv } S \ h \ x) \ (\text{Inv } S \ h \ y)$   
**apply** (*simp add: Bij-def bij-betw-def*)  
**apply** (*subgoal-tac  $\exists x' \in S. \exists y' \in S. x = h \ x' \ \& \ y = h \ y'$ , clarify*)  
**apply** (*simp add: eq [symmetric] Inv-f-f funcset-mem [THEN funcset-mem], blast*)  
**done**

**constdefs**

*auto* :: (*'a*, *'b*) *monoid-scheme*  $\Rightarrow$  (*'a*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a*) *set*  
*auto* *G*  $\equiv$  *hom* *G* *G*  $\cap$  *Bij* (*carrier* *G*)

*AutoGroup* :: (*'a*, *'c*) *monoid-scheme*  $\Rightarrow$  (*'a*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a*) *monoid*  
*AutoGroup* *G*  $\equiv$  *BijGroup* (*carrier* *G*) (*carrier* := *auto* *G*)

**lemma** (*in group*) *id-in-auto*:  $(\lambda x \in \text{carrier } G. x) \in \text{auto } G$   
**by** (*simp add: auto-def hom-def restrictI group.axioms id-Bij*)

**lemma** (in group) mult-funcset: mult  $G \in \text{carrier } G \rightarrow \text{carrier } G \rightarrow \text{carrier } G$   
 by (simp add: Pi-I group.axioms)

**lemma** (in group) restrict-Inv-hom:  
 $\llbracket h \in \text{hom } G \ G; h \in \text{Bij } (\text{carrier } G) \rrbracket$   
 $\implies \text{restrict } (\text{Inv } (\text{carrier } G) \ h) \ (\text{carrier } G) \in \text{hom } G \ G$   
 by (simp add: hom-def Bij-Inv-mem restrictI mult-funcset  
 group.axioms Bij-Inv-lemma)

**lemma** inv-BijGroup:  
 $f \in \text{Bij } S \implies m\text{-inv } (\text{BijGroup } S) \ f = (\lambda x \in S. (\text{Inv } S \ f) \ x)$   
 apply (rule group.inv-equality)  
 apply (rule group-BijGroup)  
 apply (simp-all add: BijGroup-def restrict-Inv-Bij Bij-compose-restrict-eq)  
 done

**lemma** (in group) subgroup-auto:  
 $\text{subgroup } (\text{auto } G) \ (\text{BijGroup } (\text{carrier } G))$   
**proof** (rule subgroup.intro)  
 show  $\text{auto } G \subseteq \text{carrier } (\text{BijGroup } (\text{carrier } G))$   
 by (force simp add: auto-def BijGroup-def)  
**next**  
 fix  $x \ y$   
 assume  $x \in \text{auto } G \ y \in \text{auto } G$   
 thus  $x \otimes_{\text{BijGroup } (\text{carrier } G)} y \in \text{auto } G$   
 by (force simp add: BijGroup-def is-group auto-def Bij-imp-funcset  
 group.hom-compose compose-Bij)  
**next**  
 show  $1_{\text{BijGroup } (\text{carrier } G)} \in \text{auto } G$  by (simp add: BijGroup-def id-in-auto)  
**next**  
 fix  $x$   
 assume  $x \in \text{auto } G$   
 thus  $\text{inv}_{\text{BijGroup } (\text{carrier } G)} \ x \in \text{auto } G$   
 by (simp del: restrict-apply  
 add: inv-BijGroup auto-def restrict-Inv-Bij restrict-Inv-hom)  
**qed**

**theorem** (in group) AutoGroup: group (AutoGroup  $G$ )  
 by (simp add: AutoGroup-def subgroup.subgroup-is-group subgroup-auto  
 group-BijGroup)

**end**

## 9 CRing: Abelian Groups

**theory** CRing imports FiniteProduct

```

uses (ringsimp.ML) begin

record 'a ring = 'a monoid +
  zero :: 'a (0i)
  add :: ['a, 'a] => 'a (infixl  $\oplus_1$  65)

```

Derived operations.

```

constdefs (structure R)
  a-inv :: [('a, 'm) ring-scheme, 'a] => 'a ( $\ominus_1$  - [81] 80)
  a-inv R == m-inv (| carrier = carrier R, mult = add R, one = zero R |)

  minus :: [('a, 'm) ring-scheme, 'a, 'a] => 'a (infixl  $\ominus_1$  65)
  [| x  $\in$  carrier R; y  $\in$  carrier R |] ==> x  $\ominus$  y == x  $\oplus$  ( $\ominus$  y)

```

```

locale abelian-monoid = struct G +
  assumes a-comm-monoid:
    comm-monoid (| carrier = carrier G, mult = add G, one = zero G |)

```

The following definition is redundant but simple to use.

```

locale abelian-group = abelian-monoid +
  assumes a-comm-group:
    comm-group (| carrier = carrier G, mult = add G, one = zero G |)

```

## 9.1 Basic Properties

```

lemma abelian-monoidI:
  includes struct R
  assumes a-closed:
    !!x y. [| x  $\in$  carrier R; y  $\in$  carrier R |] ==> x  $\oplus$  y  $\in$  carrier R
  and zero-closed: 0  $\in$  carrier R
  and a-assoc:
    !!x y z. [| x  $\in$  carrier R; y  $\in$  carrier R; z  $\in$  carrier R |] ==>
      (x  $\oplus$  y)  $\oplus$  z = x  $\oplus$  (y  $\oplus$  z)
  and l-zero: !!x. x  $\in$  carrier R ==> 0  $\oplus$  x = x
  and a-comm:
    !!x y. [| x  $\in$  carrier R; y  $\in$  carrier R |] ==> x  $\oplus$  y = y  $\oplus$  x
  shows abelian-monoid R
  by (auto intro!: abelian-monoid.intro comm-monoidI intro: prems)

```

```

lemma abelian-groupI:
  includes struct R
  assumes a-closed:
    !!x y. [| x  $\in$  carrier R; y  $\in$  carrier R |] ==> x  $\oplus$  y  $\in$  carrier R
  and zero-closed: zero R  $\in$  carrier R
  and a-assoc:
    !!x y z. [| x  $\in$  carrier R; y  $\in$  carrier R; z  $\in$  carrier R |] ==>
      (x  $\oplus$  y)  $\oplus$  z = x  $\oplus$  (y  $\oplus$  z)
  and a-comm:
    !!x y. [| x  $\in$  carrier R; y  $\in$  carrier R |] ==> x  $\oplus$  y = y  $\oplus$  x

```

```

and l-zero: !!x. x ∈ carrier R ==> 0 ⊕ x = x
and l-inv-ex: !!x. x ∈ carrier R ==> EX y : carrier R. y ⊕ x = 0
shows abelian-group R
by (auto intro!: abelian-group.intro abelian-monoidI
      abelian-group-axioms.intro comm-monoidI comm-groupI
      intro: prems)

lemma (in abelian-monoid) a-monoid:
  monoid (| carrier = carrier G, mult = add G, one = zero G |)
by (rule comm-monoid.axioms, rule a-comm-monoid)

lemma (in abelian-group) a-group:
  group (| carrier = carrier G, mult = add G, one = zero G |)
by (simp add: group-def a-monoid comm-group.axioms a-comm-group)

lemmas monoid-record-simps = partial-object.simps monoid.simps

lemma (in abelian-monoid) a-closed [intro, simp]:
  [| x ∈ carrier G; y ∈ carrier G |] ==> x ⊕ y ∈ carrier G
by (rule monoid.m-closed [OF a-monoid, simplified monoid-record-simps])

lemma (in abelian-monoid) zero-closed [intro, simp]:
  0 ∈ carrier G
by (rule monoid.one-closed [OF a-monoid, simplified monoid-record-simps])

lemma (in abelian-group) a-inv-closed [intro, simp]:
  x ∈ carrier G ==> x ⊖ ∈ carrier G
by (simp add: a-inv-def
      group.inv-closed [OF a-group, simplified monoid-record-simps])

lemma (in abelian-group) minus-closed [intro, simp]:
  [| x ∈ carrier G; y ∈ carrier G |] ==> x ⊖ y ∈ carrier G
by (simp add: minus-def)

lemma (in abelian-group) a-l-cancel [simp]:
  [| x ∈ carrier G; y ∈ carrier G; z ∈ carrier G |] ==>
    (x ⊕ y = x ⊕ z) = (y = z)
by (rule group.l-cancel [OF a-group, simplified monoid-record-simps])

lemma (in abelian-group) a-r-cancel [simp]:
  [| x ∈ carrier G; y ∈ carrier G; z ∈ carrier G |] ==>
    (y ⊕ x = z ⊕ x) = (y = z)
by (rule group.r-cancel [OF a-group, simplified monoid-record-simps])

lemma (in abelian-monoid) a-assoc:
  [| x ∈ carrier G; y ∈ carrier G; z ∈ carrier G |] ==>
    (x ⊕ y) ⊕ z = x ⊕ (y ⊕ z)
by (rule monoid.m-assoc [OF a-monoid, simplified monoid-record-simps])

```

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *l-zero* [simp]:  
 $x \in \text{carrier } G \implies \mathbf{0} \oplus x = x$   
**by** (rule *monoid.l-one* [OF *a-monoid*, *simplified monoid-record-simps*])

**lemma** (in *abelian-group*) *l-neg*:  
 $x \in \text{carrier } G \implies \ominus x \oplus x = \mathbf{0}$   
**by** (simp add: *a-inv-def*  
*group.l-inv* [OF *a-group*, *simplified monoid-record-simps*])

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *a-comm*:  
 $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies x \oplus y = y \oplus x$   
**by** (rule *comm-monoid.m-comm* [OF *a-comm-monoid*,  
*simplified monoid-record-simps*])

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *a-lcomm*:  
 $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G; z \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies$   
 $x \oplus (y \oplus z) = y \oplus (x \oplus z)$   
**by** (rule *comm-monoid.m-lcomm* [OF *a-comm-monoid*,  
*simplified monoid-record-simps*])

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *r-zero* [simp]:  
 $x \in \text{carrier } G \implies x \oplus \mathbf{0} = x$   
**using** *monoid.r-one* [OF *a-monoid*]  
**by** *simp*

**lemma** (in *abelian-group*) *r-neg*:  
 $x \in \text{carrier } G \implies x \oplus (\ominus x) = \mathbf{0}$   
**using** *group.r-inv* [OF *a-group*]  
**by** (simp add: *a-inv-def*)

**lemma** (in *abelian-group*) *minus-zero* [simp]:  
 $\ominus \mathbf{0} = \mathbf{0}$   
**by** (simp add: *a-inv-def*  
*group.inv-one* [OF *a-group*, *simplified monoid-record-simps*])

**lemma** (in *abelian-group*) *minus-minus* [simp]:  
 $x \in \text{carrier } G \implies \ominus (\ominus x) = x$   
**using** *group.inv-inv* [OF *a-group*, *simplified monoid-record-simps*]  
**by** (simp add: *a-inv-def*)

**lemma** (in *abelian-group*) *a-inv-inj*:  
*inj-on* (*a-inv* *G*) (*carrier* *G*)  
**using** *group.inv-inj* [OF *a-group*, *simplified monoid-record-simps*]  
**by** (simp add: *a-inv-def*)

**lemma** (in *abelian-group*) *minus-add*:  
 $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } G; y \in \text{carrier } G \rrbracket \implies \ominus (x \oplus y) = \ominus x \oplus \ominus y$   
**using** *comm-group.inv-mult* [OF *a-comm-group*]  
**by** (simp add: *a-inv-def*)

**lemmas** (in *abelian-monoid*)  $a\text{-ac} = a\text{-assoc } a\text{-comm } a\text{-lcomm}$

## 9.2 Sums over Finite Sets

This definition makes it easy to lift lemmas from *finprod*.

**constdefs**

$\text{finsum} :: [( 'b, 'm) \text{ ring-scheme}, 'a \Rightarrow 'b, 'a \text{ set}] \Rightarrow 'b$   
 $\text{finsum } G \text{ f } A == \text{finprod } (| \text{ carrier } = \text{carrier } G,$   
 $\text{mult} = \text{add } G, \text{ one} = \text{zero } G |) \text{ f } A$

**syntax**

$\text{-finsum} :: \text{index} \Rightarrow \text{idt} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ set} \Rightarrow 'b \Rightarrow 'b$   
 $((\mathcal{B} \oplus \text{--} \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot) [1000, 0, 51, 10] 10)$

**syntax** (*xsymbols*)

$\text{-finsum} :: \text{index} \Rightarrow \text{idt} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ set} \Rightarrow 'b \Rightarrow 'b$   
 $((\mathcal{B} \oplus \text{--} \in \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot) [1000, 0, 51, 10] 10)$

**syntax** (*HTML output*)

$\text{-finsum} :: \text{index} \Rightarrow \text{idt} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ set} \Rightarrow 'b \Rightarrow 'b$   
 $((\mathcal{B} \oplus \text{--} \in \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot) [1000, 0, 51, 10] 10)$

**translations**

$\oplus_{i:A}. b == \text{finsum } \diamond_1 (\%i. b) A$   
 — Beware of argument permutation!

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *finsum-empty* [simp]:

$\text{finsum } G \text{ f } \{\} = \mathbf{0}$

**by** (*rule comm-monoid.finprod-empty* [*OF a-comm-monoid,*  
*folded finsum-def, simplified monoid-record-simps*])

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *finsum-insert* [simp]:

$[| \text{ finite } F; a \notin F; f \in F \rightarrow \text{carrier } G; f a \in \text{carrier } G |]$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{finsum } G \text{ f } (\text{insert } a F) = f a \oplus \text{finsum } G \text{ f } F$

**by** (*rule comm-monoid.finprod-insert* [*OF a-comm-monoid,*  
*folded finsum-def, simplified monoid-record-simps*])

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *finsum-zero* [simp]:

$\text{finite } A \Rightarrow (\oplus_{i \in A}. \mathbf{0}) = \mathbf{0}$

**by** (*rule comm-monoid.finprod-one* [*OF a-comm-monoid, folded finsum-def,*  
*simplified monoid-record-simps*])

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *finsum-closed* [simp]:

**fixes**  $A$

**assumes** *fin*:  $\text{finite } A$  **and**  $f: f \in A \rightarrow \text{carrier } G$

**shows**  $\text{finsum } G \text{ f } A \in \text{carrier } G$

**by** (*rule comm-monoid.finprod-closed* [*OF a-comm-monoid,*  
*folded finsum-def, simplified monoid-record-simps*])

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *finsum-Un-Int*:

$[ [ \text{finite } A; \text{finite } B; g \in A \rightarrow \text{carrier } G; g \in B \rightarrow \text{carrier } G ] ] \Rightarrow$   
 $\text{finsum } G \ g \ (A \ \text{Un } B) \oplus \text{finsum } G \ g \ (A \ \text{Int } B) =$   
 $\text{finsum } G \ g \ A \oplus \text{finsum } G \ g \ B$   
**by** (rule *comm-monoid.finprod-Un-Int* [OF *a-comm-monoid*,  
*folded finsum-def*, *simplified monoid-record-simps*])

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *finsum-Un-disjoint*:

$[ [ \text{finite } A; \text{finite } B; A \ \text{Int } B = \{\};$   
 $g \in A \rightarrow \text{carrier } G; g \in B \rightarrow \text{carrier } G ] ]$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{finsum } G \ g \ (A \ \text{Un } B) = \text{finsum } G \ g \ A \oplus \text{finsum } G \ g \ B$   
**by** (rule *comm-monoid.finprod-Un-disjoint* [OF *a-comm-monoid*,  
*folded finsum-def*, *simplified monoid-record-simps*])

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *finsum-addf*:

$[ [ \text{finite } A; f \in A \rightarrow \text{carrier } G; g \in A \rightarrow \text{carrier } G ] ] \Rightarrow$   
 $\text{finsum } G \ (\%x. f \ x \oplus g \ x) \ A = (\text{finsum } G \ f \ A \oplus \text{finsum } G \ g \ A)$   
**by** (rule *comm-monoid.finprod-multf* [OF *a-comm-monoid*,  
*folded finsum-def*, *simplified monoid-record-simps*])

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *finsum-cong'*:

$[ [ A = B; g : B \rightarrow \text{carrier } G;$   
 $!!i. i : B \Rightarrow f \ i = g \ i ] ] \Rightarrow \text{finsum } G \ f \ A = \text{finsum } G \ g \ B$   
**by** (rule *comm-monoid.finprod-cong'* [OF *a-comm-monoid*,  
*folded finsum-def*, *simplified monoid-record-simps*]) *auto*

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *finsum-0* [*simp*]:

$f : \{0::\text{nat}\} \rightarrow \text{carrier } G \Rightarrow \text{finsum } G \ f \ \{..0\} = f \ 0$   
**by** (rule *comm-monoid.finprod-0* [OF *a-comm-monoid*, *folded finsum-def*,  
*simplified monoid-record-simps*])

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *finsum-Suc* [*simp*]:

$f : \{.. \text{Suc } n\} \rightarrow \text{carrier } G \Rightarrow$   
 $\text{finsum } G \ f \ \{.. \text{Suc } n\} = (f \ (\text{Suc } n) \oplus \text{finsum } G \ f \ \{..n\})$   
**by** (rule *comm-monoid.finprod-Suc* [OF *a-comm-monoid*, *folded finsum-def*,  
*simplified monoid-record-simps*])

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *finsum-Suc2*:

$f : \{.. \text{Suc } n\} \rightarrow \text{carrier } G \Rightarrow$   
 $\text{finsum } G \ f \ \{.. \text{Suc } n\} = (\text{finsum } G \ (\%i. f \ (\text{Suc } i)) \ \{..n\} \oplus f \ 0)$   
**by** (rule *comm-monoid.finprod-Suc2* [OF *a-comm-monoid*, *folded finsum-def*,  
*simplified monoid-record-simps*])

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *finsum-add* [*simp*]:

$[ [ f : \{..n\} \rightarrow \text{carrier } G; g : \{..n\} \rightarrow \text{carrier } G ] ] \Rightarrow$   
 $\text{finsum } G \ (\%i. f \ i \oplus g \ i) \ \{..n::\text{nat}\} =$   
 $\text{finsum } G \ f \ \{..n\} \oplus \text{finsum } G \ g \ \{..n\}$   
**by** (rule *comm-monoid.finprod-mult* [OF *a-comm-monoid*, *folded finsum-def*,  
*simplified monoid-record-simps*])

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *finsum-cong*:  
 $\llbracket A = B; f : B \rightarrow \text{carrier } G; \text{!!}i. i : B =_{\text{simp}} \Rightarrow f\ i = g\ i \rrbracket \Rightarrow \text{finsum } G\ f\ A = \text{finsum } G\ g\ B$   
**by** (rule *comm-monoid.finprod-cong* [OF *a-comm-monoid*, *folded finsum-def*,  
*simplified monoid-record-simps*]) (auto simp add: *simp-implies-def*)

Usually, if this rule causes a failed congruence proof error, the reason is that the premise  $g \in B \rightarrow \text{carrier } G$  cannot be shown. Adding *Pi-def* to the simpset is often useful.

## 10 The Algebraic Hierarchy of Rings

### 10.1 Basic Definitions

**locale** *ring* = *abelian-group* *R* + *monoid* *R* +  
**assumes** *l-distr*:  $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } R; y \in \text{carrier } R; z \in \text{carrier } R \rrbracket$   
 $\Rightarrow (x \oplus y) \otimes z = x \otimes z \oplus y \otimes z$   
**and** *r-distr*:  $\llbracket x \in \text{carrier } R; y \in \text{carrier } R; z \in \text{carrier } R \rrbracket$   
 $\Rightarrow z \otimes (x \oplus y) = z \otimes x \oplus z \otimes y$

**locale** *cring* = *ring* + *comm-monoid* *R*

**locale** *domain* = *cring* +  
**assumes** *one-not-zero* [*simp*]:  $1 \sim 0$   
**and** *integral*:  $\llbracket a \otimes b = 0; a \in \text{carrier } R; b \in \text{carrier } R \rrbracket \Rightarrow$   
 $a = 0 \mid b = 0$

**locale** *field* = *domain* +  
**assumes** *field-Units*:  $\text{Units } R = \text{carrier } R - \{0\}$

### 10.2 Basic Facts of Rings

**lemma** *ringI*:  
**includes** *struct* *R*  
**assumes** *abelian-group*: *abelian-group* *R*  
**and** *monoid*: *monoid* *R*  
**and** *l-distr*:  $\text{!!}x\ y\ z. \llbracket x \in \text{carrier } R; y \in \text{carrier } R; z \in \text{carrier } R \rrbracket$   
 $\Rightarrow (x \oplus y) \otimes z = x \otimes z \oplus y \otimes z$   
**and** *r-distr*:  $\text{!!}x\ y\ z. \llbracket x \in \text{carrier } R; y \in \text{carrier } R; z \in \text{carrier } R \rrbracket$   
 $\Rightarrow z \otimes (x \oplus y) = z \otimes x \oplus z \otimes y$   
**shows** *ring* *R*  
**by** (auto intro: *ring.intro*  
*abelian-group.axioms ring-axioms.intro prems*)

**lemma** (in *ring*) *is-abelian-group*:  
*abelian-group* *R*  
**by** (auto intro!: *abelian-groupI a-assoc a-comm l-neg*)



```

lemma (in ring) is-monoid:
  monoid R
  by (auto intro!: monoidI m-assoc)

lemma cringI:
  includes struct R
  assumes abelian-group: abelian-group R
  and comm-monoid: comm-monoid R
  and l-distr: !!x y z. [| x ∈ carrier R; y ∈ carrier R; z ∈ carrier R |]
    ==> (x ⊕ y) ⊗ z = x ⊗ z ⊕ y ⊗ z
  shows cring R
  proof (rule cring.intro)
    show ring-axioms R
    — Right-distributivity follows from left-distributivity and commutativity.
  proof (rule ring-axioms.intro)
    fix x y z
    assume R: x ∈ carrier R y ∈ carrier R z ∈ carrier R
    note [simp] = comm-monoid.axioms [OF comm-monoid]
    abelian-group.axioms [OF abelian-group]
    abelian-monoid.a-closed

    from R have z ⊗ (x ⊕ y) = (x ⊕ y) ⊗ z
    by (simp add: comm-monoid.m-comm [OF comm-monoid.intro])
    also from R have ... = x ⊗ z ⊕ y ⊗ z by (simp add: l-distr)
    also from R have ... = z ⊗ x ⊕ z ⊗ y
    by (simp add: comm-monoid.m-comm [OF comm-monoid.intro])
    finally show z ⊗ (x ⊕ y) = z ⊗ x ⊕ z ⊗ y .
  qed
  qed (auto intro: cring.intro
    abelian-group.axioms comm-monoid.axioms ring-axioms.intro prems)

lemma (in cring) is-comm-monoid:
  comm-monoid R
  by (auto intro!: comm-monoidI m-assoc m-comm)

```

### 10.3 Normaliser for Rings

```

lemma (in abelian-group) r-neg2:
  [| x ∈ carrier G; y ∈ carrier G |] ==> x ⊕ (⊖ x ⊕ y) = y
  proof —
    assume G: x ∈ carrier G y ∈ carrier G
    then have (x ⊕ ⊖ x) ⊕ y = y
    by (simp only: r-neg l-zero)
    with G show ?thesis
    by (simp add: a-ac)
  qed

```

```

lemma (in abelian-group) r-neg1:
  [| x ∈ carrier G; y ∈ carrier G |] ==> ⊖ x ⊕ (x ⊕ y) = y

```

**proof** –  
 assume  $G: x \in \text{carrier } G \ y \in \text{carrier } G$   
 then have  $(\ominus x \oplus x) \oplus y = y$   
 by (simp only: l-neg l-zero)  
 with  $G$  show ?thesis by (simp add: a-ac)  
**qed**

The following proofs are from Jacobson, Basic Algebra I, pp. 88–89

**lemma** (in ring) l-null [simp]:  
 $x \in \text{carrier } R \implies \mathbf{0} \otimes x = \mathbf{0}$   
**proof** –  
 assume  $R: x \in \text{carrier } R$   
 then have  $\mathbf{0} \otimes x \oplus \mathbf{0} \otimes x = (\mathbf{0} \oplus \mathbf{0}) \otimes x$   
 by (simp add: l-distr del: l-zero r-zero)  
 also from  $R$  have  $\dots = \mathbf{0} \otimes x \oplus \mathbf{0}$  by simp  
 finally have  $\mathbf{0} \otimes x \oplus \mathbf{0} \otimes x = \mathbf{0} \otimes x \oplus \mathbf{0}$  .  
 with  $R$  show ?thesis by (simp del: r-zero)  
**qed**

**lemma** (in ring) r-null [simp]:  
 $x \in \text{carrier } R \implies x \otimes \mathbf{0} = \mathbf{0}$   
**proof** –  
 assume  $R: x \in \text{carrier } R$   
 then have  $x \otimes \mathbf{0} \oplus x \otimes \mathbf{0} = x \otimes (\mathbf{0} \oplus \mathbf{0})$   
 by (simp add: r-distr del: l-zero r-zero)  
 also from  $R$  have  $\dots = x \otimes \mathbf{0} \oplus \mathbf{0}$  by simp  
 finally have  $x \otimes \mathbf{0} \oplus x \otimes \mathbf{0} = x \otimes \mathbf{0} \oplus \mathbf{0}$  .  
 with  $R$  show ?thesis by (simp del: r-zero)  
**qed**

**lemma** (in ring) l-minus:  
 $[| x \in \text{carrier } R; y \in \text{carrier } R |] \implies \ominus x \otimes y = \ominus (x \otimes y)$   
**proof** –  
 assume  $R: x \in \text{carrier } R \ y \in \text{carrier } R$   
 then have  $(\ominus x) \otimes y \oplus x \otimes y = (\ominus x \oplus x) \otimes y$  by (simp add: l-distr)  
 also from  $R$  have  $\dots = \mathbf{0}$  by (simp add: l-neg l-null)  
 finally have  $(\ominus x) \otimes y \oplus x \otimes y = \mathbf{0}$  .  
 with  $R$  have  $(\ominus x) \otimes y \oplus x \otimes y \oplus \ominus (x \otimes y) = \mathbf{0} \oplus \ominus (x \otimes y)$  by simp  
 with  $R$  show ?thesis by (simp add: a-assoc r-neg)  
**qed**

**lemma** (in ring) r-minus:  
 $[| x \in \text{carrier } R; y \in \text{carrier } R |] \implies x \otimes \ominus y = \ominus (x \otimes y)$   
**proof** –  
 assume  $R: x \in \text{carrier } R \ y \in \text{carrier } R$   
 then have  $x \otimes (\ominus y) \oplus x \otimes y = x \otimes (\ominus y \oplus y)$  by (simp add: r-distr)  
 also from  $R$  have  $\dots = \mathbf{0}$  by (simp add: l-neg r-null)  
 finally have  $x \otimes (\ominus y) \oplus x \otimes y = \mathbf{0}$  .  
 with  $R$  have  $x \otimes (\ominus y) \oplus x \otimes y \oplus \ominus (x \otimes y) = \mathbf{0} \oplus \ominus (x \otimes y)$  by simp

**with**  $R$  **show** *?thesis* **by** (*simp add: a-assoc r-neg*)  
**qed**

**lemma** (**in** *ring*) *minus-eq*:  
 $[[x \in \text{carrier } R; y \in \text{carrier } R]] \implies x \ominus y = x \oplus \ominus y$   
**by** (*simp only: minus-def*)

**lemmas** (**in** *ring*) *ring-simprules* =  
*a-closed zero-closed a-inv-closed minus-closed m-closed one-closed*  
*a-assoc l-zero l-neg a-comm m-assoc l-one l-distr minus-eq*  
*r-zero r-neg r-neg2 r-neg1 minus-add minus-minus minus-zero*  
*a-lcomm r-distr l-null r-null l-minus r-minus*

**lemmas** (**in** *cring*) *cring-simprules* =  
*a-closed zero-closed a-inv-closed minus-closed m-closed one-closed*  
*a-assoc l-zero l-neg a-comm m-assoc l-one l-distr m-comm minus-eq*  
*r-zero r-neg r-neg2 r-neg1 minus-add minus-minus minus-zero*  
*a-lcomm m-lcomm r-distr l-null r-null l-minus r-minus*

**use** *ringsimp.ML*

**method-setup** *algebra* =  
 $\langle\langle \text{Method.ctx-args cring-normalise} \rangle\rangle$   
 $\langle\langle \text{computes distributive normal form in locale context cring} \rangle\rangle$

**lemma** (**in** *cring*) *nat-pow-zero*:  
 $(n::\text{nat}) \sim 0 \implies \mathbf{0} \wedge n = \mathbf{0}$   
**by** (*induct n simp-all*)

Two examples for use of method *algebra*

**lemma**  
**includes** *ring R + cring S*  
**shows**  $[[a \in \text{carrier } R; b \in \text{carrier } R; c \in \text{carrier } S; d \in \text{carrier } S]] \implies$   
 $a \oplus \ominus (a \oplus \ominus b) = b \ \& \ c \otimes_S d = d \otimes_S c$   
**by** *algebra*

**lemma**  
**includes** *cring*  
**shows**  $[[a \in \text{carrier } R; b \in \text{carrier } R]] \implies a \ominus (a \ominus b) = b$   
**by** *algebra*

## 10.4 Sums over Finite Sets

**lemma** (**in** *cring*) *finsum-ldistr*:  
 $[[\text{finite } A; a \in \text{carrier } R; f \in A \rightarrow \text{carrier } R]] \implies$   
 $\text{finsum } R \ f \ A \otimes a = \text{finsum } R \ (\%i. f \ i \otimes a) \ A$   
**proof** (*induct set: Finites*)  
**case empty then show** *?case* **by** *simp*  
**next**

**case** (*insert x F*) **then show** ?*case* **by** (*simp add: Pi-def l-distr*)  
**qed**

**lemma** (*in cring*) *finsum-rdistr*:  
 $[| \text{finite } A; a \in \text{carrier } R; f \in A \rightarrow \text{carrier } R |] ==>$   
 $a \otimes \text{finsum } R f A = \text{finsum } R (\%i. a \otimes f i) A$   
**proof** (*induct set: Finites*)  
**case empty then show** ?*case* **by** *simp*  
**next**  
**case** (*insert x F*) **then show** ?*case* **by** (*simp add: Pi-def r-distr*)  
**qed**

## 10.5 Facts of Integral Domains

**lemma** (*in domain*) *zero-not-one* [*simp*]:  
 $0 \sim 1$   
**by** (*rule not-sym*) *simp*

**lemma** (*in domain*) *integral-iff*:  
 $[| a \in \text{carrier } R; b \in \text{carrier } R |] ==> (a \otimes b = 0) = (a = 0 \mid b = 0)$   
**proof**  
**assume**  $a \in \text{carrier } R \ b \in \text{carrier } R \ a \otimes b = 0$   
**then show**  $a = 0 \mid b = 0$  **by** (*simp add: integral*)  
**next**  
**assume**  $a \in \text{carrier } R \ b \in \text{carrier } R \ a = 0 \mid b = 0$   
**then show**  $a \otimes b = 0$  **by** *auto*  
**qed**

**lemma** (*in domain*) *m-lcancel*:  
**assumes** *prem*:  $a \sim 0$   
**and**  $R: a \in \text{carrier } R \ b \in \text{carrier } R \ c \in \text{carrier } R$   
**shows**  $(a \otimes b = a \otimes c) = (b = c)$   
**proof**  
**assume** *eq*:  $a \otimes b = a \otimes c$   
**with**  $R$  **have**  $a \otimes (b \ominus c) = 0$  **by** *algebra*  
**with**  $R$  **have**  $a = 0 \mid (b \ominus c) = 0$  **by** (*simp add: integral-iff*)  
**with** *prem* **and**  $R$  **have**  $b \ominus c = 0$  **by** *auto*  
**with**  $R$  **have**  $b = b \ominus (b \ominus c)$  **by** *algebra*  
**also from**  $R$  **have**  $b \ominus (b \ominus c) = c$  **by** *algebra*  
**finally show**  $b = c$  .  
**next**  
**assume**  $b = c$  **then show**  $a \otimes b = a \otimes c$  **by** *simp*  
**qed**

**lemma** (*in domain*) *m-rcancel*:  
**assumes** *prem*:  $a \sim 0$   
**and**  $R: a \in \text{carrier } R \ b \in \text{carrier } R \ c \in \text{carrier } R$   
**shows** *conc*:  $(b \otimes a = c \otimes a) = (b = c)$   
**proof** –

**from** *prem* **and** *R* **have**  $(a \otimes b = a \otimes c) = (b = c)$  **by** (*rule m-lcancel*)  
**with** *R* **show** *?thesis* **by** *algebra*  
**qed**

## 10.6 Morphisms

**constdefs** (*structure R S*)

*ring-hom* :: [*'a*, *'m*] *ring-scheme*, [*'b*, *'n*] *ring-scheme*] ==> [*'a* ==> *'b*] *set*  
*ring-hom R S* == {*h*. *h* ∈ *carrier R* -> *carrier S* &  
 (ALL *x y*. *x* ∈ *carrier R* & *y* ∈ *carrier R* -->  
 $h (x \otimes y) = h x \otimes_S h y$  &  $h (x \oplus y) = h x \oplus_S h y$ ) &  
 $h \mathbf{1} = \mathbf{1}_S$ }

**lemma** *ring-hom-memI*:

**includes** *struct R + struct S*  
**assumes** *hom-closed*: !!*x*. *x* ∈ *carrier R* ==> *h x* ∈ *carrier S*  
**and** *hom-mult*: !!*x y*. [| *x* ∈ *carrier R*; *y* ∈ *carrier R* |] ==>  
 $h (x \otimes y) = h x \otimes_S h y$   
**and** *hom-add*: !!*x y*. [| *x* ∈ *carrier R*; *y* ∈ *carrier R* |] ==>  
 $h (x \oplus y) = h x \oplus_S h y$   
**and** *hom-one*:  $h \mathbf{1} = \mathbf{1}_S$   
**shows** *h* ∈ *ring-hom R S*  
**by** (*auto simp add: ring-hom-def prems Pi-def*)

**lemma** *ring-hom-closed*:

[| *h* ∈ *ring-hom R S*; *x* ∈ *carrier R* |] ==> *h x* ∈ *carrier S*  
**by** (*auto simp add: ring-hom-def funcset-mem*)

**lemma** *ring-hom-mult*:

**includes** *struct R + struct S*  
**shows**  
 [| *h* ∈ *ring-hom R S*; *x* ∈ *carrier R*; *y* ∈ *carrier R* |] ==>  
 $h (x \otimes y) = h x \otimes_S h y$   
**by** (*simp add: ring-hom-def*)

**lemma** *ring-hom-add*:

**includes** *struct R + struct S*  
**shows**  
 [| *h* ∈ *ring-hom R S*; *x* ∈ *carrier R*; *y* ∈ *carrier R* |] ==>  
 $h (x \oplus y) = h x \oplus_S h y$   
**by** (*simp add: ring-hom-def*)

**lemma** *ring-hom-one*:

**includes** *struct R + struct S*  
**shows** *h* ∈ *ring-hom R S* ==>  $h \mathbf{1} = \mathbf{1}_S$   
**by** (*simp add: ring-hom-def*)

**locale** *ring-hom-cring* = *cring R + cring S + var h +*  
**assumes** *homh* [*simp*, *intro*]: *h* ∈ *ring-hom R S*

```

notes hom-closed [simp, intro] = ring-hom-closed [OF homh]
and hom-mult [simp] = ring-hom-mult [OF homh]
and hom-add [simp] = ring-hom-add [OF homh]
and hom-one [simp] = ring-hom-one [OF homh]

lemma (in ring-hom-cring) hom-zero [simp]:
   $h \mathbf{0} = \mathbf{0}_S$ 
proof –
  have  $h \mathbf{0} \oplus_S h \mathbf{0} = h \mathbf{0} \oplus_S \mathbf{0}_S$ 
    by (simp add: hom-add [symmetric] del: hom-add)
  then show ?thesis by (simp del: S.r-zero)
qed

lemma (in ring-hom-cring) hom-a-inv [simp]:
   $x \in \text{carrier } R \implies h (\ominus x) = \ominus_S h x$ 
proof –
  assume  $R: x \in \text{carrier } R$ 
  then have  $h x \oplus_S h (\ominus x) = h x \oplus_S (\ominus_S h x)$ 
    by (simp add: hom-add [symmetric] R.r-neg S.r-neg del: hom-add)
  with  $R$  show ?thesis by simp
qed

lemma (in ring-hom-cring) hom-finsum [simp]:
   $[| \text{finite } A; f \in A \rightarrow \text{carrier } R |] \implies$ 
   $h (\text{finsum } R f A) = \text{finsum } S (h \circ f) A$ 
proof (induct set: Finites)
  case empty then show ?case by simp
next
  case insert then show ?case by (simp add: Pi-def)
qed

lemma (in ring-hom-cring) hom-finprod:
   $[| \text{finite } A; f \in A \rightarrow \text{carrier } R |] \implies$ 
   $h (\text{finprod } R f A) = \text{finprod } S (h \circ f) A$ 
proof (induct set: Finites)
  case empty then show ?case by simp
next
  case insert then show ?case by (simp add: Pi-def)
qed

declare ring-hom-cring.hom-finprod [simp]

lemma id-ring-hom [simp]:
   $\text{id} \in \text{ring-hom } R R$ 
  by (auto intro!: ring-hom-memI)

end

```

## 11 Module: Modules over an Abelian Group

**theory** *Module* **imports** *CRing* **begin**

**record** (*'a*, *'b*) *module* = *'b* *ring* +  
*smult* :: [*'a*, *'b*] ==> *'b* (**infixl**  $\odot_1$  70)

**locale** *module* = *cring* *R* + *abelian-group* *M* +  
**assumes** *smult-closed* [*simp*, *intro*]:  
 $\llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; x \in \text{carrier } M \rrbracket \implies a \odot_M x \in \text{carrier } M$   
**and** *smult-l-distr*:  
 $\llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; b \in \text{carrier } R; x \in \text{carrier } M \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(a \oplus b) \odot_M x = a \odot_M x \oplus_M b \odot_M x$   
**and** *smult-r-distr*:  
 $\llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; x \in \text{carrier } M; y \in \text{carrier } M \rrbracket \implies$   
 $a \odot_M (x \oplus_M y) = a \odot_M x \oplus_M a \odot_M y$   
**and** *smult-assoc1*:  
 $\llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; b \in \text{carrier } R; x \in \text{carrier } M \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(a \otimes b) \odot_M x = a \odot_M (b \odot_M x)$   
**and** *smult-one* [*simp*]:  
 $x \in \text{carrier } M \implies \mathbf{1} \odot_M x = x$

**locale** *algebra* = *module* *R* *M* + *cring* *M* +  
**assumes** *smult-assoc2*:  
 $\llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; x \in \text{carrier } M; y \in \text{carrier } M \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(a \odot_M x) \otimes_M y = a \odot_M (x \otimes_M y)$

**lemma** *moduleI*:  
**includes** *struct* *R* + *struct* *M*  
**assumes** *cring*: *cring* *R*  
**and** *abelian-group*: *abelian-group* *M*  
**and** *smult-closed*:  
 $\llbracket a x. \llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; x \in \text{carrier } M \rrbracket \implies a \odot_M x \in \text{carrier } M$   
**and** *smult-l-distr*:  
 $\llbracket a b x. \llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; b \in \text{carrier } R; x \in \text{carrier } M \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(a \oplus b) \odot_M x = (a \odot_M x) \oplus_M (b \odot_M x)$   
**and** *smult-r-distr*:  
 $\llbracket a x y. \llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; x \in \text{carrier } M; y \in \text{carrier } M \rrbracket \implies$   
 $a \odot_M (x \oplus_M y) = (a \odot_M x) \oplus_M (a \odot_M y)$   
**and** *smult-assoc1*:  
 $\llbracket a b x. \llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; b \in \text{carrier } R; x \in \text{carrier } M \rrbracket \implies$   
 $(a \otimes b) \odot_M x = a \odot_M (b \odot_M x)$   
**and** *smult-one*:  
 $\llbracket x. x \in \text{carrier } M \implies \mathbf{1} \odot_M x = x$   
**shows** *module* *R* *M*  
**by** (*auto intro: module.intro cring.axioms abelian-group.axioms*  
*module-axioms.intro prems*)

**lemma** *algebraI*:

```

includes struct  $R + \text{struct } M$ 
assumes  $R\text{-cring}$ : cring  $R$ 
  and  $M\text{-cring}$ : cring  $M$ 
  and smult-closed:
     $\llbracket a \ x. \llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; x \in \text{carrier } M \rrbracket \implies a \odot_M x \in \text{carrier } M$ 
  and smult-l-distr:
     $\llbracket a \ b \ x. \llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; b \in \text{carrier } R; x \in \text{carrier } M \rrbracket \implies$ 
     $(a \oplus b) \odot_M x = (a \odot_M x) \oplus_M (b \odot_M x)$ 
  and smult-r-distr:
     $\llbracket a \ x \ y. \llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; x \in \text{carrier } M; y \in \text{carrier } M \rrbracket \implies$ 
     $a \odot_M (x \oplus_M y) = (a \odot_M x) \oplus_M (a \odot_M y)$ 
  and smult-assoc1:
     $\llbracket a \ b \ x. \llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; b \in \text{carrier } R; x \in \text{carrier } M \rrbracket \implies$ 
     $(a \otimes b) \odot_M x = a \odot_M (b \odot_M x)$ 
  and smult-one:
     $\llbracket x. x \in \text{carrier } M \implies (\text{one } R) \odot_M x = x$ 
  and smult-assoc2:
     $\llbracket a \ x \ y. \llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; x \in \text{carrier } M; y \in \text{carrier } M \rrbracket \implies$ 
     $(a \odot_M x) \otimes_M y = a \odot_M (x \otimes_M y)$ 
shows algebra  $R \ M$ 
by (auto intro!: algebra.intro algebra-axioms.intro cring.axioms
  module-axioms.intro prems)

```

```

lemma (in algebra)  $R\text{-cring}$ :
  cring  $R$ 
by (rule cring.intro)

```

```

lemma (in algebra)  $M\text{-cring}$ :
  cring  $M$ 
by (rule cring.intro)

```

```

lemma (in algebra) module:
  module  $R \ M$ 
by (auto intro: moduleI R-cring is-abelian-group
  smult-l-distr smult-r-distr smult-assoc1)

```

### 11.1 Basic Properties of Algebras

```

lemma (in algebra) smult-l-null [simp]:
   $x \in \text{carrier } M \implies \mathbf{0} \odot_M x = \mathbf{0}_M$ 
proof –
  assume  $M$ :  $x \in \text{carrier } M$ 
  note facts =  $M$  smult-closed
  from facts have  $\mathbf{0} \odot_M x = (\mathbf{0} \odot_M x \oplus_M \mathbf{0} \odot_M x) \oplus_M \ominus_M (\mathbf{0} \odot_M x)$  by algebra
  also from  $M$  have  $\dots = (\mathbf{0} \oplus \mathbf{0}) \odot_M x \oplus_M \ominus_M (\mathbf{0} \odot_M x)$ 
    by (simp add: smult-l-distr del: R.l-zero R.r-zero)
  also from facts have  $\dots = \mathbf{0}_M$  by algebra
  finally show ?thesis .
qed

```



**lemma** (in algebra) *smult-r-null* [simp]:  
 $a \in \text{carrier } R \implies a \odot_M \mathbf{0}_M = \mathbf{0}_M$   
**proof** –  
 assume  $R: a \in \text{carrier } R$   
 note  $\text{facts} = R \text{ smult-closed}$   
 from facts have  $a \odot_M \mathbf{0}_M = (a \odot_M \mathbf{0}_M \oplus_M a \odot_M \mathbf{0}_M) \oplus_M \ominus_M (a \odot_M \mathbf{0}_M)$   
 by algebra  
 also from  $R$  have  $\dots = a \odot_M (\mathbf{0}_M \oplus_M \mathbf{0}_M) \oplus_M \ominus_M (a \odot_M \mathbf{0}_M)$   
 by (simp add: smult-r-distr del: M.l-zero M.r-zero)  
 also from facts have  $\dots = \mathbf{0}_M$  by algebra  
 finally show ?thesis .  
**qed**

**lemma** (in algebra) *smult-l-minus*:  
 $[| a \in \text{carrier } R; x \in \text{carrier } M |] \implies (\ominus a) \odot_M x = \ominus_M (a \odot_M x)$   
**proof** –  
 assume  $RM: a \in \text{carrier } R \ x \in \text{carrier } M$   
 note  $\text{facts} = RM \text{ smult-closed}$   
 from facts have  $(\ominus a) \odot_M x = (\ominus a \odot_M x \oplus_M a \odot_M x) \oplus_M \ominus_M (a \odot_M x)$   
 by algebra  
 also from  $RM$  have  $\dots = (\ominus a \oplus a) \odot_M x \oplus_M \ominus_M (a \odot_M x)$   
 by (simp add: smult-l-distr)  
 also from facts *smult-l-null* have  $\dots = \ominus_M (a \odot_M x)$  by algebra  
 finally show ?thesis .  
**qed**

**lemma** (in algebra) *smult-r-minus*:  
 $[| a \in \text{carrier } R; x \in \text{carrier } M |] \implies a \odot_M (\ominus_M x) = \ominus_M (a \odot_M x)$   
**proof** –  
 assume  $RM: a \in \text{carrier } R \ x \in \text{carrier } M$   
 note  $\text{facts} = RM \text{ smult-closed}$   
 from facts have  $a \odot_M (\ominus_M x) = (a \odot_M \ominus_M x \oplus_M a \odot_M x) \oplus_M \ominus_M (a \odot_M x)$   
 by algebra  
 also from  $RM$  have  $\dots = a \odot_M (\ominus_M x \oplus_M x) \oplus_M \ominus_M (a \odot_M x)$   
 by (simp add: smult-r-distr)  
 also from facts *smult-r-null* have  $\dots = \ominus_M (a \odot_M x)$  by algebra  
 finally show ?thesis .  
**qed**

**end**

## 12 UnivPoly: Univariate Polynomials

**theory** UnivPoly **imports** Module **begin**

Polynomials are formalised as modules with additional operations for extracting coefficients from polynomials and for obtaining monomials from co-

efficients and exponents (record *up-ring*). The carrier set is a set of bounded functions from  $\text{Nat}$  to the coefficient domain. Bounded means that these functions return zero above a certain bound (the degree). There is a chapter on the formalisation of polynomials in the PhD thesis [1], which was implemented with axiomatic type classes. This was later ported to Locales.

## 12.1 The Constructor for Univariate Polynomials

Functions with finite support.

```

locale bound =
  fixes  $z :: 'a$ 
    and  $n :: \text{nat}$ 
    and  $f :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a$ 
  assumes bound:  $\forall m. n < m \implies f\ m = z$ 

declare bound.intro [intro!]
and bound.bound [dest]

lemma bound-below:
  assumes bound: bound  $z\ m\ f$  and nonzero:  $f\ n \neq z$  shows  $n \leq m$ 
proof (rule classical)
  assume  $\sim ?thesis$ 
  then have  $m < n$  by arith
  with bound have  $f\ n = z$  ..
  with nonzero show ?thesis by contradiction
qed

record ( $'a, 'p$ ) up-ring = ( $'a, 'p$ ) module +
  monom :: [ $'a, \text{nat}$ ]  $\Rightarrow 'p$ 
  coeff :: [ $'p, \text{nat}$ ]  $\Rightarrow 'a$ 

constdefs (structure  $R$ )
  up :: ( $'a, 'm$ ) ring-scheme  $\Rightarrow (\text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a)$  set
  up  $R == \{f. f \in \text{UNIV} \rightarrow \text{carrier } R \ \& \ (\exists n. \text{bound } \mathbf{0}\ n\ f)\}$ 
  UP :: ( $'a, 'm$ ) ring-scheme  $\Rightarrow ('a, \text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a)$  up-ring
  UP  $R == (|$ 
    carrier = up  $R,$ 
    mult = ( $\%p:\text{up } R. \%q:\text{up } R. \%n. \bigoplus i \in \{..n\}. p\ i \otimes q\ (n-i)$ ),
    one = ( $\%i. \text{if } i=0 \text{ then } \mathbf{1} \text{ else } \mathbf{0}$ ),
    zero = ( $\%i. \mathbf{0}$ ),
    add = ( $\%p:\text{up } R. \%q:\text{up } R. \%i. p\ i \oplus q\ i$ ),
    smult = ( $\%a:\text{carrier } R. \%p:\text{up } R. \%i. a \otimes p\ i$ ),
    monom = ( $\%a:\text{carrier } R. \%n\ i. \text{if } i=n \text{ then } a \text{ else } \mathbf{0}$ ),
    coeff = ( $\%p:\text{up } R. \%n. p\ n$ ) |)

```

Properties of the set of polynomials *up*.

```

lemma mem-upI [intro]:
  [|  $\forall n. f\ n \in \text{carrier } R; \exists n. \text{bound } (\text{zero } R)\ n\ f$  |]  $\implies f \in \text{up } R$ 

```

```

by (simp add: up-def Pi-def)

lemma mem-upD [dest]:
   $f \in \text{up } R \implies f \, n \in \text{carrier } R$ 
by (simp add: up-def Pi-def)

lemma (in cring) bound-upD [dest]:
   $f \in \text{up } R \implies \text{EX } n. \text{ bound } \mathbf{0} \, n \, f$ 
by (simp add: up-def)

lemma (in cring) up-one-closed:
  ( $\%n. \text{ if } n = 0 \text{ then } \mathbf{1} \text{ else } \mathbf{0}$ )  $\in \text{up } R$ 
using up-def by force

lemma (in cring) up-smult-closed:
  [ $a \in \text{carrier } R; p \in \text{up } R$ ]  $\implies (\%i. a \otimes p \, i) \in \text{up } R$ 
by force

lemma (in cring) up-add-closed:
  [ $p \in \text{up } R; q \in \text{up } R$ ]  $\implies (\%i. p \, i \oplus q \, i) \in \text{up } R$ 
proof
  fix  $n$ 
  assume  $p \in \text{up } R$  and  $q \in \text{up } R$ 
  then show  $p \, n \oplus q \, n \in \text{carrier } R$ 
    by auto
next
  assume  $UP: p \in \text{up } R \, q \in \text{up } R$ 
  show  $\text{EX } n. \text{ bound } \mathbf{0} \, n \, (\%i. p \, i \oplus q \, i)$ 
  proof –
    from  $UP$  obtain  $n$  where  $\text{boundn}: \text{bound } \mathbf{0} \, n \, p$  by fast
    from  $UP$  obtain  $m$  where  $\text{boundm}: \text{bound } \mathbf{0} \, m \, q$  by fast
    have  $\text{bound } \mathbf{0} \, (\max n \, m) \, (\%i. p \, i \oplus q \, i)$ 
    proof
      fix  $i$ 
      assume  $\max n \, m < i$ 
      with  $\text{boundn}$  and  $\text{boundm}$  and  $UP$  show  $p \, i \oplus q \, i = \mathbf{0}$  by fastsimp
    qed
  then show ?thesis ..
qed
qed

lemma (in cring) up-a-inv-closed:
   $p \in \text{up } R \implies (\%i. \ominus (p \, i)) \in \text{up } R$ 
proof
  assume  $R: p \in \text{up } R$ 
  then obtain  $n$  where  $\text{bound } \mathbf{0} \, n \, p$  by auto
  then have  $\text{bound } \mathbf{0} \, n \, (\%i. \ominus p \, i)$  by auto
  then show  $\text{EX } n. \text{ bound } \mathbf{0} \, n \, (\%i. \ominus p \, i)$  by auto
qed auto

```

```

lemma (in cring) up-mult-closed:
  [|  $p \in \text{up } R$ ;  $q \in \text{up } R$  |] ==>
  (%n.  $\bigoplus i \in \{..n\}. p \ i \otimes q \ (n-i)) \in \text{up } R$ 
proof
  fix n
  assume  $p \in \text{up } R$   $q \in \text{up } R$ 
  then show  $(\bigoplus i \in \{..n\}. p \ i \otimes q \ (n-i)) \in \text{carrier } R$ 
    by (simp add: mem-upD funcsetI)
next
  assume UP:  $p \in \text{up } R$   $q \in \text{up } R$ 
  show EX n. bound 0 n (%n.  $\bigoplus i \in \{..n\}. p \ i \otimes q \ (n-i))$ 
  proof -
    from UP obtain n where boundn: bound 0 n p by fast
    from UP obtain m where boundm: bound 0 m q by fast
    have bound 0 (n + m) (%n.  $\bigoplus i \in \{..n\}. p \ i \otimes q \ (n - i)$ )
    proof
      fix k assume bound: n + m < k
      {
        fix i
        have  $p \ i \otimes q \ (k-i) = 0$ 
        proof (cases n < i)
          case True
            with boundn have  $p \ i = 0$  by auto
            moreover from UP have  $q \ (k-i) \in \text{carrier } R$  by auto
            ultimately show ?thesis by simp
          case False
            with bound have m < k-i by arith
            with boundm have  $q \ (k-i) = 0$  by auto
            moreover from UP have  $p \ i \in \text{carrier } R$  by auto
            ultimately show ?thesis by simp
        qed
      }
    then show  $(\bigoplus i \in \{..k\}. p \ i \otimes q \ (k-i)) = 0$ 
      by (simp add: Pi-def)
    qed
  then show ?thesis by fast
  qed
qed

```

## 12.2 Effect of operations on coefficients

```

locale UP = struct R + struct P +
  defines P-def:  $P == \text{UP } R$ 

```

```

locale UP-cring = UP + cring R

```

```

locale UP-domain = UP-cring + domain R

```

Temporarily declare  $P \equiv UP\ R$  as simp rule.

**declare** (in  $UP$ )  $P$ -def [simp]

**lemma** (in  $UP$ -cring)  $coeff$ -monom [simp]:  
 $a \in carrier\ R ==>$   
 $coeff\ P\ (monom\ P\ a\ m)\ n = (if\ m=n\ then\ a\ else\ 0)$

**proof** –

**assume**  $R$ :  $a \in carrier\ R$   
**then have**  $(\%n. if\ n = m\ then\ a\ else\ 0) \in up\ R$   
**using**  $up$ -def **by force**  
**with**  $R$  **show** ?thesis **by** (simp add:  $UP$ -def)

qed

**lemma** (in  $UP$ -cring)  $coeff$ -zero [simp]:

$coeff\ P\ 0_P\ n = 0$   
**by** (auto simp add:  $UP$ -def)

**lemma** (in  $UP$ -cring)  $coeff$ -one [simp]:

$coeff\ P\ 1_P\ n = (if\ n=0\ then\ 1\ else\ 0)$   
**using**  $up$ -one-closed **by** (simp add:  $UP$ -def)

**lemma** (in  $UP$ -cring)  $coeff$ -smult [simp]:

$[| a \in carrier\ R; p \in carrier\ P |] ==>$   
 $coeff\ P\ (a \odot_P p)\ n = a \otimes coeff\ P\ p\ n$   
**by** (simp add:  $UP$ -def  $up$ -smult-closed)

**lemma** (in  $UP$ -cring)  $coeff$ -add [simp]:

$[| p \in carrier\ P; q \in carrier\ P |] ==>$   
 $coeff\ P\ (p \oplus_P q)\ n = coeff\ P\ p\ n \oplus coeff\ P\ q\ n$   
**by** (simp add:  $UP$ -def  $up$ -add-closed)

**lemma** (in  $UP$ -cring)  $coeff$ -mult [simp]:

$[| p \in carrier\ P; q \in carrier\ P |] ==>$   
 $coeff\ P\ (p \otimes_P q)\ n = (\bigoplus_{i \in \{..n\}} coeff\ P\ p\ i \otimes coeff\ P\ q\ (n-i))$   
**by** (simp add:  $UP$ -def  $up$ -mult-closed)

**lemma** (in  $UP$ )  $up$ -eqI:

**assumes**  $prem$ :  $!!n. coeff\ P\ p\ n = coeff\ P\ q\ n$   
**and**  $R$ :  $p \in carrier\ P\ q \in carrier\ P$   
**shows**  $p = q$

**proof**

**fix**  $x$

**from**  $prem$  **and**  $R$  **show**  $p\ x = q\ x$  **by** (simp add:  $UP$ -def)

qed

### 12.3 Polynomials form a commutative ring.

Operations are closed over  $P$ .

```

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-mult-closed [simp]:
  [|  $p \in \text{carrier } P$ ;  $q \in \text{carrier } P$  |] ==>  $p \otimes_P q \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  by (simp add: UP-def up-mult-closed)

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-one-closed [simp]:
   $1_P \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  by (simp add: UP-def up-one-closed)

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-zero-closed [intro, simp]:
   $0_P \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  by (auto simp add: UP-def)

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-a-closed [intro, simp]:
  [|  $p \in \text{carrier } P$ ;  $q \in \text{carrier } P$  |] ==>  $p \oplus_P q \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  by (simp add: UP-def up-add-closed)

lemma (in UP-cring) monom-closed [simp]:
   $a \in \text{carrier } R$  ==> monom  $P$   $a$   $n \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  by (auto simp add: UP-def up-def Pi-def)

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-smult-closed [simp]:
  [|  $a \in \text{carrier } R$ ;  $p \in \text{carrier } P$  |] ==>  $a \odot_P p \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  by (simp add: UP-def up-smult-closed)

lemma (in UP) coeff-closed [simp]:
   $p \in \text{carrier } P$  ==> coeff  $P$   $p$   $n \in \text{carrier } R$ 
  by (auto simp add: UP-def)

declare (in UP) P-def [simp del]

Algebraic ring properties

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-a-assoc:
  assumes  $R$ :  $p \in \text{carrier } P$   $q \in \text{carrier } P$   $r \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  shows  $(p \oplus_P q) \oplus_P r = p \oplus_P (q \oplus_P r)$ 
  by (rule up-eqI, simp add: a-assoc R, simp-all add: R)

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-l-zero [simp]:
  assumes  $R$ :  $p \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  shows  $0_P \oplus_P p = p$ 
  by (rule up-eqI, simp-all add: R)

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-l-neg-ex:
  assumes  $R$ :  $p \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  shows EX  $q : \text{carrier } P$ .  $q \oplus_P p = 0_P$ 
proof –
  let  $?q = \%i. \ominus (p \ i)$ 
  from  $R$  have closed:  $?q \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  by (simp add: UP-def P-def up-a-inv-closed)
  from  $R$  have coeff:  $!!n. \text{coeff } P \ ?q \ n = \ominus (\text{coeff } P \ p \ n)$ 

```

```

    by (simp add: UP-def P-def up-a-inv-closed)
  show ?thesis
  proof
    show  $?q \oplus_P p = \mathbf{0}_P$ 
    by (auto intro!: up-eqI simp add: R closed coeff R.l-neg)
  qed (rule closed)
qed

```

```

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-a-comm:
  assumes  $R: p \in \text{carrier } P \ q \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  shows  $p \oplus_P q = q \oplus_P p$ 
  by (rule up-eqI, simp add: a-comm R, simp-all add: R)

```

```

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-m-assoc:
  assumes  $R: p \in \text{carrier } P \ q \in \text{carrier } P \ r \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  shows  $(p \otimes_P q) \otimes_P r = p \otimes_P (q \otimes_P r)$ 
  proof (rule up-eqI)
    fix n
    {
      fix k and a b c :: nat => 'a
      assume  $R: a \in \text{UNIV} \rightarrow \text{carrier } R \ b \in \text{UNIV} \rightarrow \text{carrier } R$ 
         $c \in \text{UNIV} \rightarrow \text{carrier } R$ 
      then have  $k \leq n \implies$ 
         $(\bigoplus_{j \in \{..k\}}. (\bigoplus_{i \in \{..j\}}. a \ i \otimes b \ (j-i)) \otimes c \ (n-j)) =$ 
         $(\bigoplus_{j \in \{..k\}}. a \ j \otimes (\bigoplus_{i \in \{..k-j\}}. b \ i \otimes c \ (n-j-i)))$ 
        (concl is ?eq k)
      proof (induct k)
        case 0 then show ?case by (simp add: Pi-def m-assoc)
      next
        case (Suc k)
        then have  $k \leq n$  by arith
        then have ?eq k by (rule Suc)
        with R show ?case
          by (simp cong: finsum-cong
              add: Suc-diff-le Pi-def l-distr r-distr m-assoc)
              (simp cong: finsum-cong add: Pi-def a-ac finsum-ldistr m-assoc)
      qed
    }
    with R show  $\text{coeff } P ((p \otimes_P q) \otimes_P r) \ n = \text{coeff } P (p \otimes_P (q \otimes_P r)) \ n$ 
    by (simp add: Pi-def)
  qed (simp-all add: R)

```

```

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-l-one [simp]:
  assumes  $R: p \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  shows  $\mathbf{1}_P \otimes_P p = p$ 
  proof (rule up-eqI)
    fix n
    show  $\text{coeff } P (\mathbf{1}_P \otimes_P p) \ n = \text{coeff } P \ p \ n$ 
    proof (cases n)

```

```

    case 0 with R show ?thesis by simp
  next
    case Suc with R show ?thesis
    by (simp del: finsum-Suc add: finsum-Suc2 Pi-def)
  qed
qed (simp-all add: R)

```

```

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-l-distr:
  assumes R: p ∈ carrier P q ∈ carrier P r ∈ carrier P
  shows (p ⊕P q) ⊗P r = (p ⊗P r) ⊕P (q ⊗P r)
  by (rule up-eqI) (simp add: l-distr R Pi-def, simp-all add: R)

```

```

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-m-comm:
  assumes R: p ∈ carrier P q ∈ carrier P
  shows p ⊗P q = q ⊗P p
proof (rule up-eqI)
  fix n
  {
    fix k and a b :: nat => 'a
    assume R: a ∈ UNIV -> carrier R b ∈ UNIV -> carrier R
    then have k ≤ n ==>
      (⊕ i ∈ {..k}. a i ⊗ b (n-i)) =
      (⊕ i ∈ {..k}. a (k-i) ⊗ b (i+n-k))
      (concl is ?eq k)
    proof (induct k)
      case 0 then show ?case by (simp add: Pi-def)
    next
      case (Suc k) then show ?case
      by (subst (2) finsum-Suc2) (simp add: Pi-def a-comm)+
    qed
  }
  note l = this
  from R show coeff P (p ⊗P q) n = coeff P (q ⊗P p) n
  apply (simp add: Pi-def)
  apply (subst l)
  apply (auto simp add: Pi-def)
  apply (simp add: m-comm)
  done
qed (simp-all add: R)

```

```

theorem (in UP-cring) UP-cring:
  cring P
  by (auto intro!: cringI abelian-groupI comm-monoidI UP-a-assoc UP-l-zero
    UP-l-neg-ex UP-a-comm UP-m-assoc UP-l-one UP-m-comm UP-l-distr)

```

```

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-ring:
  ring P
  by (auto intro: ring.intro cring.axioms UP-cring)

```



```

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-a-inv-closed [intro, simp]:
   $p \in \text{carrier } P \implies \ominus_P p \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  by (rule abelian-group.a-inv-closed
    [OF ring.is-abelian-group [OF UP-ring]])

lemma (in UP-cring) coeff-a-inv [simp]:
  assumes  $R: p \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  shows  $\text{coeff } P (\ominus_P p) \ n = \ominus (\text{coeff } P \ p \ n)$ 
proof –
  from  $R$  coeff-closed UP-a-inv-closed have
     $\text{coeff } P (\ominus_P p) \ n = \ominus \text{coeff } P \ p \ n \oplus (\text{coeff } P \ p \ n \oplus \text{coeff } P (\ominus_P p) \ n)$ 
  by algebra
  also from  $R$  have  $\dots = \ominus (\text{coeff } P \ p \ n)$ 
  by (simp del: coeff-add add: coeff-add [THEN sym]
    abelian-group.r-neg [OF ring.is-abelian-group [OF UP-ring]])
  finally show ?thesis .
qed

```

Interpretation of lemmas from *cring*. Saves lifting 43 lemmas manually.

```

interpretation UP-cring < cring  $P$ 
  using UP-cring
  by – (erule cring.axioms)+

```

## 12.4 Polynomials form an Algebra

```

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-smult-l-distr:
   $\llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; b \in \text{carrier } R; p \in \text{carrier } P \rrbracket \implies$ 
   $(a \oplus b) \odot_P p = a \odot_P p \oplus_P b \odot_P p$ 
  by (rule up-eqI) (simp-all add: R.l-distr)

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-smult-r-distr:
   $\llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; p \in \text{carrier } P; q \in \text{carrier } P \rrbracket \implies$ 
   $a \odot_P (p \oplus_P q) = a \odot_P p \oplus_P a \odot_P q$ 
  by (rule up-eqI) (simp-all add: R.r-distr)

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-smult-assoc1:
   $\llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; b \in \text{carrier } R; p \in \text{carrier } P \rrbracket \implies$ 
   $(a \otimes b) \odot_P p = a \odot_P (b \odot_P p)$ 
  by (rule up-eqI) (simp-all add: R.m-assoc)

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-smult-one [simp]:
   $p \in \text{carrier } P \implies \mathbf{1} \odot_P p = p$ 
  by (rule up-eqI) simp-all

lemma (in UP-cring) UP-smult-assoc2:
   $\llbracket a \in \text{carrier } R; p \in \text{carrier } P; q \in \text{carrier } P \rrbracket \implies$ 
   $(a \odot_P p) \otimes_P q = a \odot_P (p \otimes_P q)$ 
  by (rule up-eqI) (simp-all add: R.finsum-rdistr R.m-assoc Pi-def)

```

Interpretation of lemmas from *algebra*.

**lemma** (in *cring*) *cring*:

*cring*  $R$

**by** (*fast intro*: *cring.intro* *prems*)

**lemma** (in *UP-cring*) *UP-algebra*:

*algebra*  $R$   $P$

**by** (*auto intro*: *algebraI*  $R$ .*cring* *UP-cring* *UP-smult-l-distr* *UP-smult-r-distr*  
*UP-smult-assoc1* *UP-smult-assoc2*)

**interpretation** *UP-cring* < *algebra*  $R$   $P$

**using** *UP-algebra*

**by** – (*erule* *algebra.axioms*)+

## 12.5 Further lemmas involving monomials

**lemma** (in *UP-cring*) *monom-zero* [*simp*]:

*monom*  $P$   $\mathbf{0}$   $n = \mathbf{0}_P$

**by** (*simp add*: *UP-def* *P-def*)

**lemma** (in *UP-cring*) *monom-mult-is-smult*:

**assumes**  $R$ :  $a \in \text{carrier } R$   $p \in \text{carrier } P$

**shows** *monom*  $P$   $a$   $0 \otimes_P p = a \odot_P p$

**proof** (*rule up-eqI*)

**fix**  $n$

**have** *coeff*  $P$  ( $p \otimes_P \text{monom } P$   $a$   $0$ )  $n = \text{coeff } P$  ( $a \odot_P p$ )  $n$

**proof** (*cases*  $n$ )

**case**  $0$  **with**  $R$  **show** ?thesis **by** (*simp add*:  $R$ .*m-comm*)

**next**

**case** *Suc* **with**  $R$  **show** ?thesis

**by** (*simp cong*:  $R$ .*finsum-cong* *add*:  $R$ .*r-null* *Pi-def*)

(*simp add*:  $R$ .*m-comm*)

**qed**

**with**  $R$  **show** *coeff*  $P$  (*monom*  $P$   $a$   $0 \otimes_P p$ )  $n = \text{coeff } P$  ( $a \odot_P p$ )  $n$

**by** (*simp add*: *UP-m-comm*)

**qed** (*simp-all add*:  $R$ )

**lemma** (in *UP-cring*) *monom-add* [*simp*]:

[ $a \in \text{carrier } R$ ;  $b \in \text{carrier } R$ ] ==>

*monom*  $P$  ( $a \oplus b$ )  $n = \text{monom } P$   $a$   $n \oplus_P \text{monom } P$   $b$   $n$

**by** (*rule up-eqI*) *simp-all*

**lemma** (in *UP-cring*) *monom-one-Suc*:

*monom*  $P$   $\mathbf{1}$  (*Suc*  $n$ ) = *monom*  $P$   $\mathbf{1}$   $n \otimes_P \text{monom } P$   $\mathbf{1}$   $1$

**proof** (*rule up-eqI*)

**fix**  $k$

**show** *coeff*  $P$  (*monom*  $P$   $\mathbf{1}$  (*Suc*  $n$ ))  $k = \text{coeff } P$  (*monom*  $P$   $\mathbf{1}$   $n \otimes_P \text{monom } P$   
 $\mathbf{1}$   $1$ )  $k$

**proof** (*cases*  $k = \text{Suc } n$ )

```

case True show ?thesis
proof –
  from True have less-add-diff:
    !!i. [n < i; i <= n + m] ==> n + m – i < m by arith
  from True have coeff P (monom P 1 (Suc n)) k = 1 by simp
  also from True
  have ... = ( $\bigoplus i \in \{..<n\} \cup \{n\}$ . coeff P (monom P 1 n) i  $\otimes$ 
    coeff P (monom P 1 1) (k – i))
    by (simp cong: R.finsum-cong add: Pi-def)
  also have ... = ( $\bigoplus i \in \{..n\}$ . coeff P (monom P 1 n) i  $\otimes$ 
    coeff P (monom P 1 1) (k – i))
    by (simp only: ivl-disj-un-singleton)
  also from True
  have ... = ( $\bigoplus i \in \{..n\} \cup \{n<..k\}$ . coeff P (monom P 1 n) i  $\otimes$ 
    coeff P (monom P 1 1) (k – i))
    by (simp cong: R.finsum-cong add: R.finsum-Un-disjoint ivl-disj-int-one
      order-less-imp-not-eq Pi-def)
  also from True have ... = coeff P (monom P 1 n  $\otimes_P$  monom P 1 1) k
    by (simp add: ivl-disj-un-one)
  finally show ?thesis .
qed
next
case False
note neq = False
let ?s =
   $\lambda i$ . (if n = i then 1 else 0)  $\otimes$  (if Suc 0 = k – i then 1 else 0)
from neq have coeff P (monom P 1 (Suc n)) k = 0 by simp
also have ... = ( $\bigoplus i \in \{..k\}$ . ?s i)
proof –
  have f1: ( $\bigoplus i \in \{..<n\}$ . ?s i) = 0
    by (simp cong: R.finsum-cong add: Pi-def)
  from neq have f2: ( $\bigoplus i \in \{n\}$ . ?s i) = 0
    by (simp cong: R.finsum-cong add: Pi-def) arith
  have f3: n < k ==> ( $\bigoplus i \in \{n<..k\}$ . ?s i) = 0
    by (simp cong: R.finsum-cong add: order-less-imp-not-eq Pi-def)
  show ?thesis
proof (cases k < n)
  case True then show ?thesis by (simp cong: R.finsum-cong add: Pi-def)
next
  case False then have n-le-k: n <= k by arith
  show ?thesis
  proof (cases n = k)
  case True
  then have 0 = ( $\bigoplus i \in \{..<n\} \cup \{n\}$ . ?s i)
    by (simp cong: R.finsum-cong add: ivl-disj-int-singleton Pi-def)
  also from True have ... = ( $\bigoplus i \in \{..k\}$ . ?s i)
    by (simp only: ivl-disj-un-singleton)
  finally show ?thesis .
next

```

```

case False with n-le-k have n-less-k:  $n < k$  by arith
with neq have  $0 = (\bigoplus i \in \{..<n\} \cup \{n\}. ?s\ i)$ 
  by (simp add: R.finsum-Un-disjoint f1 f2
    ivl-disj-int-singleton Pi-def del: Un-insert-right)
also have  $... = (\bigoplus i \in \{..n\}. ?s\ i)$ 
  by (simp only: ivl-disj-un-singleton)
also from n-less-k neq have  $... = (\bigoplus i \in \{..n\} \cup \{n<..k\}. ?s\ i)$ 
  by (simp add: R.finsum-Un-disjoint f3 ivl-disj-int-one Pi-def)
also from n-less-k have  $... = (\bigoplus i \in \{..k\}. ?s\ i)$ 
  by (simp only: ivl-disj-un-one)
finally show ?thesis .
qed
qed
qed
also have  $... = \text{coeff } P (\text{monom } P\ 1\ n \otimes_P \text{monom } P\ 1\ 1)\ k$  by simp
finally show ?thesis .
qed
qed (simp-all)

lemma (in UP-cring) monom-mult-smult:
   $[[\ a \in \text{carrier } R; b \in \text{carrier } R\ ]]\ ==> \text{monom } P\ (a \otimes b)\ n = a \odot_P \text{monom } P\ b\ n$ 
  by (rule up-eqI) simp-all

lemma (in UP-cring) monom-one [simp]:
   $\text{monom } P\ 1\ 0 = 1_P$ 
  by (rule up-eqI) simp-all

lemma (in UP-cring) monom-one-mult:
   $\text{monom } P\ 1\ (n + m) = \text{monom } P\ 1\ n \otimes_P \text{monom } P\ 1\ m$ 
proof (induct n)
  case 0 show ?case by simp
next
  case Suc then show ?case
    by (simp only: add-Suc monom-one-Suc) (simp add: P.m-ac)
qed

lemma (in UP-cring) monom-mult [simp]:
  assumes R:  $a \in \text{carrier } R\ b \in \text{carrier } R$ 
  shows  $\text{monom } P\ (a \otimes b)\ (n + m) = \text{monom } P\ a\ n \otimes_P \text{monom } P\ b\ m$ 
proof –
  from R have  $\text{monom } P\ (a \otimes b)\ (n + m) = \text{monom } P\ (a \otimes b \otimes 1)\ (n + m)$ 
by simp
  also from R have  $... = a \otimes b \odot_P \text{monom } P\ 1\ (n + m)$ 
  by (simp add: monom-mult-smult del: R.r-one)
  also have  $... = a \otimes b \odot_P (\text{monom } P\ 1\ n \otimes_P \text{monom } P\ 1\ m)$ 
  by (simp only: monom-one-mult)
  also from R have  $... = a \odot_P (b \odot_P (\text{monom } P\ 1\ n \otimes_P \text{monom } P\ 1\ m))$ 
  by (simp add: UP-smult-assoc1)

```

```

also from R have ... = a  $\odot_P$  (b  $\odot_P$  (monom P 1 m  $\otimes_P$  monom P 1 n))
  by (simp add: P.m-comm)
also from R have ... = a  $\odot_P$  ((b  $\odot_P$  monom P 1 m)  $\otimes_P$  monom P 1 n)
  by (simp add: UP-smult-assoc2)
also from R have ... = a  $\odot_P$  (monom P 1 n  $\otimes_P$  (b  $\odot_P$  monom P 1 m))
  by (simp add: P.m-comm)
also from R have ... = (a  $\odot_P$  monom P 1 n)  $\otimes_P$  (b  $\odot_P$  monom P 1 m)
  by (simp add: UP-smult-assoc2)
also from R have ... = monom P (a  $\otimes$  1) n  $\otimes_P$  monom P (b  $\otimes$  1) m
  by (simp add: monom-mult-smult del: R.r-one)
also from R have ... = monom P a n  $\otimes_P$  monom P b m by simp
finally show ?thesis .
qed

```

```

lemma (in UP-cring) monom-a-inv [simp]:
  a  $\in$  carrier R ==> monom P ( $\ominus$  a) n =  $\ominus_P$  monom P a n
  by (rule up-eqI) simp-all

```

```

lemma (in UP-cring) monom-inj:
  inj-on (%a. monom P a n) (carrier R)
proof (rule inj-onI)
  fix x y
  assume R: x  $\in$  carrier R y  $\in$  carrier R and eq: monom P x n = monom P y n
  then have coeff P (monom P x n) n = coeff P (monom P y n) n by simp
  with R show x = y by simp
qed

```

## 12.6 The degree function

```

constdefs (structure R)
  deg :: [( $'a$ ,  $'m$ ) ring-scheme, nat =>  $'a$ ] => nat
  deg R p == LEAST n. bound 0 n (coeff (UP R) p)

```

```

lemma (in UP-cring) deg-aboveI:
  [| (!!m. n < m ==> coeff P p m = 0); p  $\in$  carrier P |] ==> deg R p <= n
  by (unfold deg-def P-def) (fast intro: Least-le)

```

```

lemma (in UP-cring) deg-aboveD:
  [| deg R p < m; p  $\in$  carrier P |] ==> coeff P p m = 0
proof -
  assume R: p  $\in$  carrier P and deg R p < m
  from R obtain n where bound 0 n (coeff P p)
  by (auto simp add: UP-def P-def)
  then have bound 0 (deg R p) (coeff P p)
  by (auto simp: deg-def P-def dest: LeastI)
  then show ?thesis ..
qed

```

```

lemma (in UP-cring) deg-belowI:
  assumes non-zero:  $n \sim 0 \implies \text{coeff } P \ p \ n \sim 0$ 
  and  $R: p \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  shows  $n \leq \text{deg } R \ p$ 
— Logically, this is a slightly stronger version of deg-aboveD
proof (cases  $n=0$ )
  case True then show ?thesis by simp
next
  case False then have  $\text{coeff } P \ p \ n \sim 0$  by (rule non-zero)
  then have  $\sim \text{deg } R \ p < n$  by (fast dest: deg-aboveD intro: R)
  then show ?thesis by arith
qed

lemma (in UP-cring) lcoeff-nonzero-deg:
  assumes deg:  $\text{deg } R \ p \sim 0$  and  $R: p \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  shows  $\text{coeff } P \ p \ (\text{deg } R \ p) \sim 0$ 
proof –
  from R obtain m where  $\text{deg } R \ p \leq m$  and m-coeff:  $\text{coeff } P \ p \ m \sim 0$ 
  proof –
  have minus:  $!!(n::\text{nat}) \ m. \ n \sim 0 \implies (n - \text{Suc } 0 < m) = (n \leq m)$ 
    by arith

  from deg have  $\text{deg } R \ p - 1 < (\text{LEAST } n. \text{ bound } 0 \ n \ (\text{coeff } P \ p))$ 
    by (unfold deg-def P-def) arith
  then have  $\sim \text{bound } 0 \ (\text{deg } R \ p - 1) \ (\text{coeff } P \ p)$  by (rule not-less-Least)
  then have  $\text{EX } m. \ \text{deg } R \ p - 1 < m \ \& \ \text{coeff } P \ p \ m \sim 0$ 
    by (unfold bound-def) fast
  then have  $\text{EX } m. \ \text{deg } R \ p \leq m \ \& \ \text{coeff } P \ p \ m \sim 0$  by (simp add: deg
minus)
  then show ?thesis by auto
qed
  with deg-belowI R have  $\text{deg } R \ p = m$  by fastsimp
  with m-coeff show ?thesis by simp
qed

lemma (in UP-cring) lcoeff-nonzero-nonzero:
  assumes deg:  $\text{deg } R \ p = 0$  and nonzero:  $p \sim 0_P$  and  $R: p \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  shows  $\text{coeff } P \ p \ 0 \sim 0$ 
proof –
  have  $\text{EX } m. \ \text{coeff } P \ p \ m \sim 0$ 
  proof (rule classical)
    assume  $\sim ?thesis$ 
    with R have  $p = 0_P$  by (auto intro: up-eqI)
    with nonzero show ?thesis by contradiction
  qed
  then obtain m where  $\text{coeff } P \ p \ m \sim 0$  ..
  then have  $m \leq \text{deg } R \ p$  by (rule deg-belowI)
  then have  $m = 0$  by (simp add: deg)

```

**with** *coeff* **show** *?thesis* **by** *simp*  
**qed**

**lemma** (in *UP-crng*) *lcoeff-nonzero*:  
 assumes *neg*:  $p \sim = \mathbf{0}_P$  and *R*:  $p \in \text{carrier } P$   
 shows *coeff* *P* *p* (*deg* *R* *p*)  $\sim = \mathbf{0}$   
**proof** (*cases deg R p = 0*)  
 case *True* **with** *neg R* **show** *?thesis* **by** (*simp add: lcoeff-nonzero-nonzero*)  
**next**  
 case *False* **with** *neg R* **show** *?thesis* **by** (*simp add: lcoeff-nonzero-deg*)  
**qed**

**lemma** (in *UP-crng*) *deg-eqI*:  
 $\llbracket \text{!!}m. n < m \implies \text{coeff } P \text{ } p \text{ } m = \mathbf{0};$   
 $\text{!!}n. n \sim = 0 \implies \text{coeff } P \text{ } p \text{ } n \sim = \mathbf{0}; p \in \text{carrier } P \rrbracket \implies \text{deg } R \text{ } p = n$   
**by** (*fast intro: le-anti-sym deg-aboveI deg-belowI*)

Degree and polynomial operations

**lemma** (in *UP-crng*) *deg-add* [*simp*]:  
 assumes *R*:  $p \in \text{carrier } P$   $q \in \text{carrier } P$   
 shows *deg* *R* ( $p \oplus_P q$ )  $\leq \max (\text{deg } R \text{ } p) (\text{deg } R \text{ } q)$   
**proof** (*cases deg R p <= deg R q*)  
 case *True* **show** *?thesis*  
**by** (*rule deg-aboveI*) (*simp-all add: True R deg-aboveD*)  
**next**  
 case *False* **show** *?thesis*  
**by** (*rule deg-aboveI*) (*simp-all add: False R deg-aboveD*)  
**qed**

**lemma** (in *UP-crng*) *deg-monom-le*:  
 $a \in \text{carrier } R \implies \text{deg } R (\text{monom } P \text{ } a \text{ } n) \leq n$   
**by** (*intro deg-aboveI*) *simp-all*

**lemma** (in *UP-crng*) *deg-monom* [*simp*]:  
 $\llbracket a \sim = \mathbf{0}; a \in \text{carrier } R \rrbracket \implies \text{deg } R (\text{monom } P \text{ } a \text{ } n) = n$   
**by** (*fastsimp intro: le-anti-sym deg-aboveI deg-belowI*)

**lemma** (in *UP-crng*) *deg-const* [*simp*]:  
 assumes *R*:  $a \in \text{carrier } R$  **shows** *deg* *R* (*monom* *P* *a* 0) = 0  
**proof** (*rule le-anti-sym*)  
 show *deg* *R* (*monom* *P* *a* 0)  $\leq 0$  **by** (*rule deg-aboveI*) (*simp-all add: R*)  
**next**  
 show  $0 \leq \text{deg } R (\text{monom } P \text{ } a \text{ } 0)$  **by** (*rule deg-belowI*) (*simp-all add: R*)  
**qed**

**lemma** (in *UP-crng*) *deg-zero* [*simp*]:  
 $\text{deg } R \mathbf{0}_P = 0$   
**proof** (*rule le-anti-sym*)  
 show *deg* *R*  $\mathbf{0}_P \leq 0$  **by** (*rule deg-aboveI*) *simp-all*

```

next
  show  $0 \leq \deg R \mathbf{0}_P$  by (rule deg-belowI) simp-all
qed

lemma (in UP-crng) deg-one [simp]:
   $\deg R \mathbf{1}_P = 0$ 
proof (rule le-anti-sym)
  show  $\deg R \mathbf{1}_P \leq 0$  by (rule deg-aboveI) simp-all
next
  show  $0 \leq \deg R \mathbf{1}_P$  by (rule deg-belowI) simp-all
qed

lemma (in UP-crng) deg-uminus [simp]:
  assumes  $R: p \in \text{carrier } P$  shows  $\deg R (\ominus_P p) = \deg R p$ 
proof (rule le-anti-sym)
  show  $\deg R (\ominus_P p) \leq \deg R p$  by (simp add: deg-aboveI deg-aboveD R)
next
  show  $\deg R p \leq \deg R (\ominus_P p)$ 
  by (simp add: deg-belowI lcoeff-nonzero-deg
    inj-on-iff [OF R.a-inv-inj, of -  $\mathbf{0}$ , simplified] R)
qed

lemma (in UP-domain) deg-smult-ring:
   $[[a \in \text{carrier } R; p \in \text{carrier } P]] \implies$ 
 $\deg R (a \odot_P p) \leq (\text{if } a = \mathbf{0} \text{ then } 0 \text{ else } \deg R p)$ 
  by (cases  $a = \mathbf{0}$ ) (simp add: deg-aboveI deg-aboveD)+

lemma (in UP-domain) deg-smult [simp]:
  assumes  $R: a \in \text{carrier } R \ p \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  shows  $\deg R (a \odot_P p) = (\text{if } a = \mathbf{0} \text{ then } 0 \text{ else } \deg R p)$ 
proof (rule le-anti-sym)
  show  $\deg R (a \odot_P p) \leq (\text{if } a = \mathbf{0} \text{ then } 0 \text{ else } \deg R p)$ 
  by (rule deg-smult-ring)
next
  show  $(\text{if } a = \mathbf{0} \text{ then } 0 \text{ else } \deg R p) \leq \deg R (a \odot_P p)$ 
  proof (cases  $a = \mathbf{0}$ )
  qed (simp, simp add: deg-belowI lcoeff-nonzero-deg integral-iff R)
qed

lemma (in UP-crng) deg-mult-crng:
  assumes  $R: p \in \text{carrier } P \ q \in \text{carrier } P$ 
  shows  $\deg R (p \otimes_P q) \leq \deg R p + \deg R q$ 
proof (rule deg-aboveI)
  fix  $m$ 
  assume boundm:  $\deg R p + \deg R q < m$ 
  {
    fix  $k \ i$ 
    assume boundk:  $\deg R p + \deg R q < k$ 
    then have  $\text{coeff } P \ p \ i \otimes \text{coeff } P \ q \ (k - i) = \mathbf{0}$ 

```



```

proof (cases deg R p < i)
  case True then show ?thesis by (simp add: deg-aboveD R)
next
  case False with boundk have deg R q < k - i by arith
  then show ?thesis by (simp add: deg-aboveD R)
qed
}
with boundm R show coeff P (p ⊗P q) m = 0 by simp
qed (simp add: R)

lemma (in UP-domain) deg-mult [simp]:
  [| p ~ 0P; q ~ 0P; p ∈ carrier P; q ∈ carrier P |] ==>
  deg R (p ⊗P q) = deg R p + deg R q
proof (rule le-anti-sym)
  assume p ∈ carrier P q ∈ carrier P
  show deg R (p ⊗P q) <= deg R p + deg R q by (rule deg-mult-cring)
next
  let ?s = (%i. coeff P p i ⊗ coeff P q (deg R p + deg R q - i))
  assume R: p ∈ carrier P q ∈ carrier P and nz: p ~ 0P q ~ 0P
  have less-add-diff: !(k::nat) n m. k < n ==> m < n + m - k by arith
  show deg R p + deg R q <= deg R (p ⊗P q)
  proof (rule deg-belowI, simp add: R)
    have (⊕ i ∈ {.. deg R p + deg R q}. ?s i)
      = (⊕ i ∈ {.. < deg R p} ∪ {deg R p .. deg R p + deg R q}. ?s i)
    by (simp only: ivl-disj-un-one)
    also have ... = (⊕ i ∈ {deg R p .. deg R p + deg R q}. ?s i)
    by (simp cong: R.finsum-cong add: R.finsum-Un-disjoint ivl-disj-int-one
      deg-aboveD less-add-diff R Pi-def)
    also have ... = (⊕ i ∈ {deg R p} ∪ {deg R p <.. deg R p + deg R q}. ?s i)
    by (simp only: ivl-disj-un-singleton)
    also have ... = coeff P p (deg R p) ⊗ coeff P q (deg R q)
    by (simp cong: R.finsum-cong
      add: ivl-disj-int-singleton deg-aboveD R Pi-def)
    finally have (⊕ i ∈ {.. deg R p + deg R q}. ?s i)
      = coeff P p (deg R p) ⊗ coeff P q (deg R q) .
    with nz show (⊕ i ∈ {.. deg R p + deg R q}. ?s i) ~ 0
    by (simp add: integral-iff lcoeff-nonzero R)
  qed (simp add: R)
qed

lemma (in UP-cring) coeff-finsum:
  assumes fin: finite A
  shows p ∈ A -> carrier P ==>
    coeff P (finsum P p A) k = (⊕ i ∈ A. coeff P (p i) k)
  using fin by induct (auto simp: Pi-def)

lemma (in UP-cring) up-repr:
  assumes R: p ∈ carrier P
  shows (⊕P i ∈ {..deg R p}. monom P (coeff P p i) i) = p

```

**proof** (rule up-eqI)  
 let ?s = (%i. monom P (coeff P p i) i)  
 fix k  
 from R have RR: !!i. (if i = k then coeff P p i else 0) ∈ carrier R  
 by simp  
 show coeff P (⊕<sub>P</sub> i ∈ {..
**proof** (cases k <= deg R p)  
 case True  
 hence coeff P (⊕<sub>P</sub> i ∈ {..
 coeff P (⊕<sub>P</sub> i ∈ {..k} ∪ {k<..
 by (simp only: ivl-disj-un-one)  
 also from True  
 have ... = coeff P (⊕<sub>P</sub> i ∈ {..k}. ?s i) k  
 by (simp cong: R.finsum-cong add: R.finsum-Un-disjoint  
 ivl-disj-int-one order-less-imp-not-eq2 coeff-finsum R RR Pi-def)  
 also  
 have ... = coeff P (⊕<sub>P</sub> i ∈ {..<k} ∪ {k}. ?s i) k  
 by (simp only: ivl-disj-un-singleton)  
 also have ... = coeff P p k  
 by (simp cong: R.finsum-cong  
 add: ivl-disj-int-singleton coeff-finsum deg-aboveD R RR Pi-def)  
 finally show ?thesis .  
 next  
 case False  
 hence coeff P (⊕<sub>P</sub> i ∈ {..
 coeff P (⊕<sub>P</sub> i ∈ {..<deg R p} ∪ {deg R p}. ?s i) k  
 by (simp only: ivl-disj-un-singleton)  
 also from False have ... = coeff P p k  
 by (simp cong: R.finsum-cong  
 add: ivl-disj-int-singleton coeff-finsum deg-aboveD R Pi-def)  
 finally show ?thesis .  
 qed  
**qed** (simp-all add: R Pi-def)

**lemma** (in UP-cring) up-repr-le:  
 [| deg R p <= n; p ∈ carrier P |] ==>  
 (⊕<sub>P</sub> i ∈ {..n}. monom P (coeff P p i) i) = p  
**proof** –  
 let ?s = (%i. monom P (coeff P p i) i)  
 assume R: p ∈ carrier P and deg R p <= n  
 then have finsum P ?s {..n} = finsum P ?s ({..
 by (simp only: ivl-disj-un-one)  
 also have ... = finsum P ?s {..
 by (simp cong: P.finsum-cong add: P.finsum-Un-disjoint ivl-disj-int-one  
 deg-aboveD R Pi-def)  
 also have ... = p by (rule up-repr)  
 finally show ?thesis .  
 qed

## 12.7 Polynomials over an integral domain form an integral domain

lemma *domainI*:

assumes *cring*: *cring* *R*  
 and *one-not-zero*:  $\text{one } R \sim \text{zero } R$   
 and *integral*:  $\llbracket a \ b. \llbracket \text{mult } R \ a \ b = \text{zero } R; a \in \text{carrier } R; \\ b \in \text{carrier } R \rrbracket \implies a = \text{zero } R \mid b = \text{zero } R$   
 shows *domain* *R*  
 by (*auto intro!*: *domain.intro domain-axioms.intro cring.axioms prems*  
*del: disjCI*)

lemma (in *UP-domain*) *UP-one-not-zero*:

$1_P \sim 0_P$

proof

assume  $1_P = 0_P$   
 hence  $\text{coeff } P \ 1_P \ 0 = (\text{coeff } P \ 0_P \ 0)$  by *simp*  
 hence  $1 = 0$  by *simp*  
 with *one-not-zero* show *False* by *contradiction*

qed

lemma (in *UP-domain*) *UP-integral*:

$\llbracket p \otimes_P q = 0_P; p \in \text{carrier } P; q \in \text{carrier } P \rrbracket \implies p = 0_P \mid q = 0_P$

proof –

fix *p q*

assume *pq*:  $p \otimes_P q = 0_P$  and *R*:  $p \in \text{carrier } P \ q \in \text{carrier } P$

show  $p = 0_P \mid q = 0_P$

proof (*rule classical*)

assume *c*:  $\sim (p = 0_P \mid q = 0_P)$

with *R* have  $\text{deg } R \ p + \text{deg } R \ q = \text{deg } R \ (p \otimes_P q)$  by *simp*

also from *pq* have  $\dots = 0$  by *simp*

finally have  $\text{deg } R \ p + \text{deg } R \ q = 0$  .

then have *f1*:  $\text{deg } R \ p = 0 \ \& \ \text{deg } R \ q = 0$  by *simp*

from *f1* *R* have  $p = (\bigoplus_P i \in \{..0\}. \text{monom } P \ (\text{coeff } P \ p \ i) \ i)$

by (*simp only: up-repr-le*)

also from *R* have  $\dots = \text{monom } P \ (\text{coeff } P \ p \ 0) \ 0$  by *simp*

finally have *p*:  $p = \text{monom } P \ (\text{coeff } P \ p \ 0) \ 0$  .

from *f1* *R* have  $q = (\bigoplus_P i \in \{..0\}. \text{monom } P \ (\text{coeff } P \ q \ i) \ i)$

by (*simp only: up-repr-le*)

also from *R* have  $\dots = \text{monom } P \ (\text{coeff } P \ q \ 0) \ 0$  by *simp*

finally have *q*:  $q = \text{monom } P \ (\text{coeff } P \ q \ 0) \ 0$  .

from *R* have  $\text{coeff } P \ p \ 0 \otimes \text{coeff } P \ q \ 0 = \text{coeff } P \ (p \otimes_P q) \ 0$  by *simp*

also from *pq* have  $\dots = 0$  by *simp*

finally have  $\text{coeff } P \ p \ 0 \otimes \text{coeff } P \ q \ 0 = 0$  .

with *R* have  $\text{coeff } P \ p \ 0 = 0 \mid \text{coeff } P \ q \ 0 = 0$

by (*simp add: R.integral-iff*)

with *p q* show  $p = 0_P \mid q = 0_P$  by *fastsimp*

qed

qed

**theorem** (in *UP-domain*) *UP-domain*:  
 domain *P*  
 by (auto intro!: domainI *UP-cring UP-one-not-zero UP-integral del: disjCI*)

Interpretation of theorems from *domain*.

**interpretation** *UP-domain* < *domain P*  
 using *UP-domain*  
 by (rule *domain.axioms*)

## 12.8 Evaluation Homomorphism and Universal Property

**theorem** (in *cring*) *diagonal-sum*:  

$$\llbracket f \in \{..n + m::nat\} \rightarrow carrier\ R; g \in \{..n + m\} \rightarrow carrier\ R \rrbracket ==>$$

$$(\bigoplus k \in \{..n + m\}. \bigoplus i \in \{..k\}. f\ i \otimes g\ (k - i)) =$$

$$(\bigoplus k \in \{..n + m\}. \bigoplus i \in \{..n + m - k\}. f\ k \otimes g\ i)$$
  
**proof** –  
 assume *Rf*:  $f \in \{..n + m\} \rightarrow carrier\ R$  and *Rg*:  $g \in \{..n + m\} \rightarrow carrier\ R$   
 {  
   fix *j*  
   have  $j \leq n + m ==>$   
      $(\bigoplus k \in \{..j\}. \bigoplus i \in \{..k\}. f\ i \otimes g\ (k - i)) =$   
      $(\bigoplus k \in \{..j\}. \bigoplus i \in \{..j - k\}. f\ k \otimes g\ i)$   
   **proof** (*induct j*)  
     case 0 from *Rf Rg* show ?case by (*simp add: Pi-def*)  
   next  
     case (*Suc j*)  
     have *R6*:  $\llbracket i\ k. \llbracket k \leq j; i \leq Suc\ j - k \rrbracket ==> g\ i \in carrier\ R$   
       using *Suc* by (auto intro!: *funcset-mem [OF Rg]*) arith  
     have *R8*:  $\llbracket i\ k. \llbracket k \leq Suc\ j; i \leq k \rrbracket ==> g\ (k - i) \in carrier\ R$   
       using *Suc* by (auto intro!: *funcset-mem [OF Rg]*) arith  
     have *R9*:  $\llbracket i\ k. \llbracket k \leq Suc\ j \rrbracket ==> f\ k \in carrier\ R$   
       using *Suc* by (auto intro!: *funcset-mem [OF Rf]*)  
     have *R10*:  $\llbracket i\ k. \llbracket k \leq Suc\ j; i \leq Suc\ j - k \rrbracket ==> g\ i \in carrier\ R$   
       using *Suc* by (auto intro!: *funcset-mem [OF Rg]*) arith  
     have *R11*:  $g\ 0 \in carrier\ R$   
       using *Suc* by (auto intro!: *funcset-mem [OF Rg]*)  
     from *Suc* show ?case  
       by (*simp cong: finsum-cong add: Suc-diff-le a-ac*  
         *Pi-def R6 R8 R9 R10 R11*)  
   qed  
 }  
 then show ?thesis by fast  
 qed

**lemma** (in *abelian-monoid*) *boundD-carrier*:  

$$\llbracket bound\ 0\ n\ f; n < m \rrbracket ==> f\ m \in carrier\ G$$
  
 by *auto*

**theorem** (in *cring*) *cauchy-product*:

```

assumes bf: bound 0 n f and bg: bound 0 m g
and Rf: f ∈ {..n} -> carrier R and Rg: g ∈ {..m} -> carrier R
shows (⊕ k ∈ {..n + m}. ⊕ i ∈ {..k}. f i ⊗ g (k - i)) =
  (⊕ i ∈ {..n}. f i) ⊗ (⊕ i ∈ {..m}. g i)
proof -
  have f: !!x. f x ∈ carrier R
  proof -
    fix x
    show f x ∈ carrier R
    using Rf bf boundD-carrier by (cases x <= n) (auto simp: Pi-def)
  qed
  have g: !!x. g x ∈ carrier R
  proof -
    fix x
    show g x ∈ carrier R
    using Rg bg boundD-carrier by (cases x <= m) (auto simp: Pi-def)
  qed
  from f g have (⊕ k ∈ {..n + m}. ⊕ i ∈ {..k}. f i ⊗ g (k - i)) =
    (⊕ k ∈ {..n + m}. ⊕ i ∈ {..n + m - k}. f k ⊗ g i)
    by (simp add: diagonal-sum Pi-def)
  also have ... = (⊕ k ∈ {..n} ∪ {n < ..n + m}. ⊕ i ∈ {..n + m - k}. f k ⊗ g i)
    by (simp only: ivl-disj-un-one)
  also from f g have ... = (⊕ k ∈ {..n}. ⊕ i ∈ {..n + m - k}. f k ⊗ g i)
    by (simp cong: finsum-cong
      add: bound.bound [OF bf] finsum-Un-disjoint ivl-disj-int-one Pi-def)
  also from f g
  have ... = (⊕ k ∈ {..n}. ⊕ i ∈ {..m} ∪ {m < ..n + m - k}. f k ⊗ g i)
    by (simp cong: finsum-cong add: ivl-disj-un-one le-add-diff Pi-def)
  also from f g have ... = (⊕ k ∈ {..n}. ⊕ i ∈ {..m}. f k ⊗ g i)
    by (simp cong: finsum-cong
      add: bound.bound [OF bg] finsum-Un-disjoint ivl-disj-int-one Pi-def)
  also from f g have ... = (⊕ i ∈ {..n}. f i) ⊗ (⊕ i ∈ {..m}. g i)
    by (simp add: finsum-ldistr diagonal-sum Pi-def,
      simp cong: finsum-cong add: finsum-rdistr Pi-def)
  finally show ?thesis .
qed

```

```

lemma (in UP-cring) const-ring-hom:
  (%a. monom P a 0) ∈ ring-hom R P
by (auto intro!: ring-hom-memI intro: up-eqI simp: monom-mult-is-smult)

```

```

constdefs (structure S)
  eval :: [( 'a, 'm) ring-scheme, ('b, 'n) ring-scheme,
    'a => 'b, 'b, nat => 'a] => 'b
  eval R S phi s == λp ∈ carrier (UP R).
    ⊕ i ∈ {..deg R p}. phi (coeff (UP R) p i) ⊗ s ( ^ ) i

```

```

lemma (in UP) eval-on-carrier:

```

**includes** *struct S*  
**shows**  $p \in \text{carrier } P \Rightarrow$   
 $\text{eval } R \ S \ \text{phi } s \ p = (\bigoplus_S i \in \{..deg \ R \ p\}. \ \text{phi } (\text{coeff } P \ p \ i) \otimes_S s \ (\wedge)_S i)$   
**by** (*unfold eval-def, fold P-def*) *simp*

**lemma** (*in UP*) *eval-extensional*:  
 $\text{eval } R \ S \ \text{phi } p \in \text{extensional } (\text{carrier } P)$   
**by** (*unfold eval-def, fold P-def*) *simp*

The universal property of the polynomial ring

**locale** *UP-pre-univ-prop = ring-hom-cring R S h + UP-cring R P*

**locale** *UP-univ-prop = UP-pre-univ-prop + var s + var Eval +*  
**assumes** *indet-img-carrier [simp, intro]: s ∈ carrier S*  
**defines** *Eval-def: Eval == eval R S h s*

**theorem** (*in UP-pre-univ-prop*) *eval-ring-hom*:  
**assumes** *S: s ∈ carrier S*  
**shows**  $\text{eval } R \ S \ h \ s \in \text{ring-hom } P \ S$   
**proof** (*rule ring-hom-memI*)  
**fix** *p*  
**assume** *R: p ∈ carrier P*  
**then show**  $\text{eval } R \ S \ h \ s \ p \in \text{carrier } S$   
**by** (*simp only: eval-on-carrier*) (*simp add: S Pi-def*)  
**next**  
**fix** *p q*  
**assume** *R: p ∈ carrier P q ∈ carrier P*  
**then show**  $\text{eval } R \ S \ h \ s \ (p \otimes_P q) = \text{eval } R \ S \ h \ s \ p \otimes_S \text{eval } R \ S \ h \ s \ q$   
**proof** (*simp only: eval-on-carrier UP-mult-closed*)  
**from** *R S* **have**  
 $(\bigoplus_S i \in \{..deg \ R \ (p \otimes_P q)\}. \ h \ (\text{coeff } P \ (p \otimes_P q) \ i) \otimes_S s \ (\wedge)_S i) =$   
 $(\bigoplus_S i \in \{..deg \ R \ (p \otimes_P q)\} \cup \{deg \ R \ (p \otimes_P q) < ..deg \ R \ p + deg \ R \ q\}. \ h \ (\text{coeff } P \ (p \otimes_P q) \ i) \otimes_S s \ (\wedge)_S i)$   
**by** (*simp cong: S.finsum-cong*  
*add: deg-aboveD S.finsum-Un-disjoint ivl-disj-int-one Pi-def*  
*del: coeff-mult*)  
**also from** *R* **have** ... =  
 $(\bigoplus_S i \in \{..deg \ R \ p + deg \ R \ q\}. \ h \ (\text{coeff } P \ (p \otimes_P q) \ i) \otimes_S s \ (\wedge)_S i)$   
**by** (*simp only: ivl-disj-un-one deg-mult-cring*)  
**also from** *R S* **have** ... =  
 $(\bigoplus_S i \in \{..deg \ R \ p + deg \ R \ q\}. \ \bigoplus_S k \in \{..i\}. \ h \ (\text{coeff } P \ p \ k) \otimes_S h \ (\text{coeff } P \ q \ (i - k)) \otimes_S (s \ (\wedge)_S k \otimes_S s \ (\wedge)_S (i - k)))$   
**by** (*simp cong: S.finsum-cong add: S.nat-pow-mult Pi-def*  
*S.m-ac S.finsum-rdistr*)  
**also from** *R S* **have** ... =  
 $(\bigoplus_S i \in \{..deg \ R \ p\}. \ h \ (\text{coeff } P \ p \ i) \otimes_S s \ (\wedge)_S i) \otimes_S$   
 $(\bigoplus_S i \in \{..deg \ R \ q\}. \ h \ (\text{coeff } P \ q \ i) \otimes_S s \ (\wedge)_S i)$

```

    by (simp add: S.cauchy-product [THEN sym] bound.intro deg-aboveD S.m-ac
        Pi-def)
  finally show
    
$$(\bigoplus_S i \in \{..deg\ R\ (p \oplus_P q)\}. h\ (coeff\ P\ (p \oplus_P q)\ i) \otimes_S s\ (\wedge)_S i) =$$


$$(\bigoplus_S i \in \{..deg\ R\ p\}. h\ (coeff\ P\ p\ i) \otimes_S s\ (\wedge)_S i) \otimes_S$$


$$(\bigoplus_S i \in \{..deg\ R\ q\}. h\ (coeff\ P\ q\ i) \otimes_S s\ (\wedge)_S i) .$$

  qed
next
  fix p q
  assume R: p ∈ carrier P q ∈ carrier P
  then show eval R S h s (p ⊕P q) = eval R S h s p ⊕S eval R S h s q
  proof (simp only: eval-on-carrier P.a-closed)
    from S R have
      
$$(\bigoplus_S i \in \{..deg\ R\ (p \oplus_P q)\}. h\ (coeff\ P\ (p \oplus_P q)\ i) \otimes_S s\ (\wedge)_S i) =$$


$$(\bigoplus_S i \in \{..deg\ R\ (p \oplus_P q)\} \cup \{deg\ R\ (p \oplus_P q) < ..max\ (deg\ R\ p)\ (deg\ R\ q)\}. h\ (coeff\ P\ (p \oplus_P q)\ i) \otimes_S s\ (\wedge)_S i)$$

      by (simp cong: S.finsum-cong
          add: deg-aboveD S.finsum-Un-disjoint ivl-disj-int-one Pi-def
          del: coeff-add)
    also from R have ... =
      
$$(\bigoplus_S i \in \{..max\ (deg\ R\ p)\ (deg\ R\ q)\}. h\ (coeff\ P\ (p \oplus_P q)\ i) \otimes_S s\ (\wedge)_S i)$$

      by (simp add: ivl-disj-un-one)
    also from R S have ... =
      
$$(\bigoplus_{Si \in \{..max\ (deg\ R\ p)\ (deg\ R\ q)\}. h\ (coeff\ P\ p\ i) \otimes_S s\ (\wedge)_S i} \oplus_S$$


$$(\bigoplus_{Si \in \{..max\ (deg\ R\ p)\ (deg\ R\ q)\}. h\ (coeff\ P\ q\ i) \otimes_S s\ (\wedge)_S i})$$

      by (simp cong: S.finsum-cong
          add: S.l-distr deg-aboveD ivl-disj-int-one Pi-def)
    also have ... =
      
$$(\bigoplus_S i \in \{..deg\ R\ p\} \cup \{deg\ R\ p < ..max\ (deg\ R\ p)\ (deg\ R\ q)\}. h\ (coeff\ P\ p\ i) \otimes_S s\ (\wedge)_S i) \oplus_S$$


$$(\bigoplus_S i \in \{..deg\ R\ q\} \cup \{deg\ R\ q < ..max\ (deg\ R\ p)\ (deg\ R\ q)\}. h\ (coeff\ P\ q\ i) \otimes_S s\ (\wedge)_S i)$$

      by (simp only: ivl-disj-un-one le-maxI1 le-maxI2)
    also from R S have ... =
      
$$(\bigoplus_S i \in \{..deg\ R\ p\}. h\ (coeff\ P\ p\ i) \otimes_S s\ (\wedge)_S i) \oplus_S$$


$$(\bigoplus_S i \in \{..deg\ R\ q\}. h\ (coeff\ P\ q\ i) \otimes_S s\ (\wedge)_S i)$$

      by (simp cong: S.finsum-cong
          add: deg-aboveD S.finsum-Un-disjoint ivl-disj-int-one Pi-def)
    finally show
      
$$(\bigoplus_{Si \in \{..deg\ R\ (p \oplus_P q)\}. h\ (coeff\ P\ (p \oplus_P q)\ i) \otimes_S s\ (\wedge)_S i) =$$


$$(\bigoplus_{Si \in \{..deg\ R\ p\}. h\ (coeff\ P\ p\ i) \otimes_S s\ (\wedge)_S i} \oplus_S$$


$$(\bigoplus_{Si \in \{..deg\ R\ q\}. h\ (coeff\ P\ q\ i) \otimes_S s\ (\wedge)_S i}) .$$

  qed
next
  show eval R S h s 1P = 1S
  by (simp only: eval-on-carrier UP-one-closed) simp
qed

```

Interpretation of ring homomorphism lemmas.

**interpretation** *UP-univ-prop* < *ring-hom-cring* *P S Eval*  
**by** (*unfold Eval-def*)  
 (*fast intro!*: *ring-hom-cring.intro UP-cring cring.axioms prems*  
*intro: ring-hom-cring-axioms.intro eval-ring-hom*)

Further properties of the evaluation homomorphism.

**lemma** (*in UP-pre-univ-prop*) *eval-const*:  
 $[\![\ s \in \text{carrier } S; r \in \text{carrier } R \ ]\!] \implies \text{eval } R \ S \ h \ s \ (\text{monom } P \ r \ 0) = h \ r$   
**by** (*simp only: eval-on-carrier monom-closed*) *simp*

The following proof is complicated by the fact that in arbitrary rings one might have  $\mathbf{1}_R = \mathbf{0}_R$ .

**lemma** (*in UP-pre-univ-prop*) *eval-monom1*:  
**assumes** *S*:  $s \in \text{carrier } S$   
**shows**  $\text{eval } R \ S \ h \ s \ (\text{monom } P \ \mathbf{1} \ 1) = s$   
**proof** (*simp only: eval-on-carrier monom-closed R.one-closed*)  
**from** *S* **have**  
 $(\bigoplus_S i \in \{.. \deg R (\text{monom } P \ \mathbf{1} \ 1)\}. h (\text{coeff } P (\text{monom } P \ \mathbf{1} \ 1) \ i) \otimes_S s \ (\wedge)_S i)$   
 $=$   
 $(\bigoplus_S i \in \{.. \deg R (\text{monom } P \ \mathbf{1} \ 1)\} \cup \{\deg R (\text{monom } P \ \mathbf{1} \ 1) < ..1\}. h (\text{coeff } P (\text{monom } P \ \mathbf{1} \ 1) \ i) \otimes_S s \ (\wedge)_S i)$   
**by** (*simp cong: S.finsum-cong del: coeff-monom*  
*add: deg-aboveD S.finsum-Un-disjoint ivl-disj-int-one Pi-def*)  
**also have** ...  $=$   
 $(\bigoplus_S i \in \{..1\}. h (\text{coeff } P (\text{monom } P \ \mathbf{1} \ 1) \ i) \otimes_S s \ (\wedge)_S i)$   
**by** (*simp only: ivl-disj-un-one deg-monom-le R.one-closed*)  
**also have** ...  $= s$   
**proof** (*cases s = 0<sub>S</sub>*)  
**case** *True* **then show** *?thesis* **by** (*simp add: Pi-def*)  
**next**  
**case** *False* **then show** *?thesis* **by** (*simp add: S Pi-def*)  
**qed**  
**finally show**  $(\bigoplus_S i \in \{.. \deg R (\text{monom } P \ \mathbf{1} \ 1)\}. h (\text{coeff } P (\text{monom } P \ \mathbf{1} \ 1) \ i) \otimes_S s \ (\wedge)_S i) = s$ .  
**qed**

**lemma** (*in UP-cring*) *monom-pow*:  
**assumes** *R*:  $a \in \text{carrier } R$   
**shows**  $(\text{monom } P \ a \ n) (\wedge)_P m = \text{monom } P \ (a (\wedge) m) (n * m)$   
**proof** (*induct m*)  
**case** *0* **from** *R* **show** *?case* **by** *simp*  
**next**  
**case** *Suc* **with** *R* **show** *?case*  
**by** (*simp del: monom-mult add: monom-mult [THEN sym] add-commute*)  
**qed**

**lemma** (*in ring-hom-cring*) *hom-pow* [*simp*]:  
 $x \in \text{carrier } R \implies h (x (\wedge) n) = h \ x \ (\wedge)_S (n::\text{nat})$   
**by** (*induct n*) *simp-all*



**lemma** (in *UP-univ-prop*) *Eval-monom*:  
 $r \in \text{carrier } R \implies \text{Eval } (\text{monom } P \ r \ n) = h \ r \otimes_S s \ (\wedge)_S n$   
**proof** –  
 assume  $R: r \in \text{carrier } R$   
 from  $R$  have  $\text{Eval } (\text{monom } P \ r \ n) = \text{Eval } (\text{monom } P \ r \ 0 \otimes_P (\text{monom } P \ \mathbf{1} \ 1) (\wedge)_P n)$   
 by (simp del: monom-mult add: monom-mult [THEN sym] monom-pow)  
 also  
 from  $R$  eval-monom1 [where  $s = s$ , folded Eval-def]  
 have  $\dots = h \ r \otimes_S s \ (\wedge)_S n$   
 by (simp add: eval-const [where  $s = s$ , folded Eval-def])  
 finally show ?thesis .  
**qed**

**lemma** (in *UP-pre-univ-prop*) *eval-monom*:  
 assumes  $R: r \in \text{carrier } R$  and  $S: s \in \text{carrier } S$   
 shows  $\text{eval } R \ S \ h \ s \ (\text{monom } P \ r \ n) = h \ r \otimes_S s \ (\wedge)_S n$   
**proof** –  
 from  $S$  interpret *UP-univ-prop* [ $R \ S \ h \ P \ s \ -$ ]  
 by (auto intro!: *UP-univ-prop-axioms.intro*)  
 from  $R$   
 show ?thesis by (rule *Eval-monom*)  
**qed**

**lemma** (in *UP-univ-prop*) *Eval-smult*:  
 $[r \in \text{carrier } R; p \in \text{carrier } P] \implies \text{Eval } (r \odot_P p) = h \ r \otimes_S \text{Eval } p$   
**proof** –  
 assume  $R: r \in \text{carrier } R$  and  $P: p \in \text{carrier } P$   
 then show ?thesis  
 by (simp add: monom-mult-is-smult [THEN sym]  
 eval-const [where  $s = s$ , folded Eval-def])  
**qed**

**lemma** *ring-hom-cringI*:  
 assumes *cring*  $R$   
 and *cring*  $S$   
 and  $h \in \text{ring-hom } R \ S$   
 shows *ring-hom-cring*  $R \ S \ h$   
 by (fast intro: *ring-hom-cring.intro* *ring-hom-cring-axioms.intro* *cring.axioms prems*)

**lemma** (in *UP-pre-univ-prop*) *UP-hom-unique*:  
 includes *ring-hom-cring*  $P \ S \ \text{Phi}$   
 assumes  $\text{Phi}: \text{Phi } (\text{monom } P \ \mathbf{1} \ (\text{Suc } 0)) = s$   
 !! $r. r \in \text{carrier } R \implies \text{Phi } (\text{monom } P \ r \ 0) = h \ r$   
 includes *ring-hom-cring*  $P \ S \ \text{Psi}$   
 assumes  $\text{Psi}: \text{Psi } (\text{monom } P \ \mathbf{1} \ (\text{Suc } 0)) = s$   
 !! $r. r \in \text{carrier } R \implies \text{Psi } (\text{monom } P \ r \ 0) = h \ r$

```

and  $P: p \in \text{carrier } P$  and  $S: s \in \text{carrier } S$ 
shows  $\text{Phi } p = \text{Psi } p$ 
proof –
  have  $\text{Phi } p =$ 
     $\text{Phi } (\bigoplus_P i \in \{..deg R p\}. \text{monom } P (\text{coeff } P p i) 0 \otimes_P \text{monom } P \mathbf{1} 1 (^)P$ 
 $i)$ 
    by (simp add: up-repr P monom-mult [THEN sym] monom-pow del: monom-mult)
  also
    have  $\dots =$ 
       $\text{Psi } (\bigoplus_P i \in \{..deg R p\}. \text{monom } P (\text{coeff } P p i) 0 \otimes_P \text{monom } P \mathbf{1} 1 (^)P i)$ 
      by (simp add: Phi Psi P Pi-def comp-def)
    also have  $\dots = \text{Psi } p$ 
      by (simp add: up-repr P monom-mult [THEN sym] monom-pow del: monom-mult)
    finally show  $?thesis$  .
qed

```

```

lemma (in UP-pre-univ-prop) ring-homD:
  assumes  $\text{Phi}: \text{Phi} \in \text{ring-hom } P S$ 
  shows ring-hom-cring  $P S \text{Phi}$ 
proof (rule ring-hom-cring.intro)
  show ring-hom-cring-axioms  $P S \text{Phi}$ 
  by (rule ring-hom-cring-axioms.intro) (rule Phi)
qed (auto intro: P.cring cring.axioms)

```

```

theorem (in UP-pre-univ-prop) UP-universal-property:
  assumes  $S: s \in \text{carrier } S$ 
  shows  $EX! \text{Phi}. \text{Phi} \in \text{ring-hom } P S \cap \text{extensional } (\text{carrier } P) \ \&$ 
     $\text{Phi } (\text{monom } P \mathbf{1} 1) = s \ \&$ 
     $(\text{ALL } r : \text{carrier } R. \text{Phi } (\text{monom } P r 0) = h r)$ 
  using  $S \text{eval-monom1}$ 
  apply (auto intro: eval-ring-hom eval-const eval-extensional)
  apply (rule extensionalityI)
  apply (auto intro: UP-hom-unique ring-homD)
done

```

## 12.9 Sample application of evaluation homomorphism

```

lemma UP-pre-univ-propI:
  assumes cring  $R$ 
  and cring  $S$ 
  and  $h \in \text{ring-hom } R S$ 
  shows UP-pre-univ-prop  $R S h$ 
  by (fast intro: UP-pre-univ-prop.intro ring-hom-cring-axioms.intro
    cring.axioms prems)

```

```

constdefs
  INTEG :: int ring
  INTEG == ( $| \text{carrier} = \text{UNIV}, \text{mult} = \text{op } *, \text{one} = 1, \text{zero} = 0, \text{add} = \text{op } +$ 
 $|$ )

```

```

lemma INTEG-cring:
  cring INTEG
  by (unfold INTEG-def) (auto intro!: cringI abelian-groupI comm-monoidI
    zadd-zminus-inverse2 zadd-zmult-distrib)

```

```

lemma INTEG-id-eval:
  UP-pre-univ-prop INTEG INTEG id
  by (fast intro: UP-pre-univ-propI INTEG-cring id-ring-hom)

```

Interpretation now enables to import all theorems and lemmas valid in the context of homomorphisms between *INTEG* and *UP INTEG* globally.

```

interpretation INTEG: UP-pre-univ-prop [INTEG INTEG id]
  using INTEG-id-eval
  by – (erule UP-pre-univ-prop.axioms)+

```

```

lemma INTEG-closed [intro, simp]:
  z ∈ carrier INTEG
  by (unfold INTEG-def) simp

```

```

lemma INTEG-mult [simp]:
  mult INTEG z w = z * w
  by (unfold INTEG-def) simp

```

```

lemma INTEG-pow [simp]:
  pow INTEG z n = z ^ n
  by (induct n) (simp-all add: INTEG-def nat-pow-def)

```

```

lemma eval INTEG INTEG id 10 (monom (UP INTEG) 5 2) = 500
  by (simp add: INTEG.eval-monom)

```

```

end

```

## References

- [1] C. Ballarin. *Computer Algebra and Theorem Proving*. PhD thesis, University of Cambridge, 1999. <http://www4.in.tum.de/~ballarin/publications.html>.
- [2] N. Jacobson. *Basic Algebra I*. Freeman, 1985.
- [3] F. Kammüller and L. C. Paulson. A formal proof of sylow’s theorem: An experiment in abstract algebra with Isabelle HOL. *J. Automated Reasoning*, (23):235–264, 1999.